

# NWA-3160 Series

*IEEE 802.11a/b/g Business WLAN Access Point*

*IEEE 802.11b/g Business WLAN Access Point*

## ***User's Guide***

Version 3.60

7/2007

Edition 1

### **DEFAULT LOGIN**

<b>IP Address</b>	<b>http://192.168.1.2</b>
<b>Password</b>	<b>1234</b>





# About This User's Guide

## Intended Audience

This manual is intended for people who want to configure the ZyXEL Device using the web configurator. You should have at least a basic knowledge of TCP/IP networking concepts and topology.

## Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide  
The Quick Start Guide is designed to help you get up and running right away. It contains information on setting up your network and configuring for Internet access.
- Supporting Disk  
Refer to the included CD for support documents.
- ZyXEL Web Site  
Please refer to [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for additional support documentation and product certifications.

## User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. Send all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to the following address, or use e-mail instead. Thank you!

The Technical Writing Team,  
ZyXEL Communications Corp.,  
6 Innovation Road II,  
Science-Based Industrial Park,  
Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan.  
E-mail: [techwriters@zyxel.com.tw](mailto:techwriters@zyxel.com.tw)

# Document Conventions

## Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this User's Guide.



---

**Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.**

---



---

**Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.**

---










## Syntax Conventions

- The NWA-3160 or NWA-3163 may be referred to as the “ZyXEL Device”, the “device” or the “system” in this User's Guide.
- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A key stroke is denoted by square brackets and uppercase text, for example, [ENTER] means the “enter” or “return” key on your keyboard.
- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters and then press the [ENTER] key. “Select” or “choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- A right angle bracket ( > ) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Maintenance > Log > Log Setting** means you first click **Maintenance** in the navigation panel, then the **Log** sub menu and finally the **Log Setting** tab to get to that screen.
- Units of measurement may denote the “metric” value or the “scientific” value. For example, “k” for kilo may denote “1000” or “1024”, “M” for mega may denote “1000000” or “1048576” and so on.
- “e.g.” is a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.” means “that is” or “in other words”.



## Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this User's Guide may use the following generic icons. The ZyXEL Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

ZyXEL Device 	Computer 	Notebook computer 
Server 	DSLAM 	Firewall 
Telephone 	Switch 	Router 

# Safety Warnings



---

**For your safety, be sure to read and follow all warning notices and instructions.**

---

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device.
- Connect the power adaptor or cord to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the power outlet.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Antenna Warning! This device meets ETSI and FCC certification requirements when using the included antenna(s). Only use the included antenna(s).
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical lines, gas or water pipes will be damaged.
- The PoE (Power over Ethernet) devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.

This product is recyclable. Dispose of it properly.





# Contents Overview

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>31</b>
Introducing the ZyXEL Device .....	33
Introducing the Web Configurator .....	41
Status Screens .....	45
Tutorial .....	49
<b>The Web Configurator .....</b>	<b>75</b>
System Screens .....	77
Wireless Configuration .....	83
Wireless Security Configuration .....	99
MBSSID and SSID .....	115
Other Wireless Configuration .....	123
IP Screen .....	133
Rogue AP .....	135
Remote Management Screens .....	141
Internal RADIUS Server .....	151
Certificates .....	157
Log Screens .....	175
VLAN .....	181
Maintenance .....	199
<b>SMT and Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>207</b>
Introducing the SMT .....	209
General Setup .....	215
LAN Setup .....	217
SNMP Configuration .....	219
System Password .....	221
System Information and Diagnosis .....	223
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance .....	229
System Maintenance and Information .....	235
Troubleshooting .....	243
<b>Appendices and Index .....</b>	<b>249</b>



# Table of Contents

<b>About This User's Guide .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Document Conventions.....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Safety Warnings.....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Contents Overview .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Table of Contents.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>List of Tables.....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Part I: Introduction.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Introducing the ZyXEL Device .....</b>	<b>33</b>
1.1 Introducing the ZyXEL Device .....	33
1.2 Applications for the ZyXEL Device .....	33
1.2.1 Access Point .....	34
1.2.2 Bridge / Repeater .....	34
1.2.3 AP + Bridge .....	35
1.2.4 MBSSID .....	36
1.2.5 Pre-Configured SSID Profiles .....	37
1.3 Ways to Manage the ZyXEL Device .....	38
1.4 Good Habits for Managing the ZyXEL Device .....	38
1.5 Hardware Connections .....	38
1.6 LEDs .....	39
<b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>Introducing the Web Configurator .....</b>	<b>41</b>
2.1 Accessing the Web Configurator .....	41
2.2 Resetting the ZyXEL Device .....	42
2.2.1 Methods of Restoring Factory-Defaults .....	43
2.3 Navigating the Web Configurator .....	43
<b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Status Screens .....</b>	<b>45</b>

3.1 The Status Screen .....	45
<b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>Tutorial .....</b>	<b>49</b>
4.1 How to Configure the Wireless LAN .....	49
4.1.1 Choosing the Wireless Mode .....	49
4.1.2 Wireless LAN Configuration Overview .....	49
4.1.3 Further Reading .....	51
4.2 How to Configure Multiple Wireless Networks .....	51
4.2.1 Change the Operating Mode .....	52
4.2.2 Configure the VoIP Network .....	54
4.2.2.1 Set Up Security for the VoIP Profile .....	55
4.2.2.2 Activate the VoIP Profile .....	57
4.2.3 Configure the Guest Network .....	57
4.2.3.1 Set Up Security for the Guest Profile .....	58
4.2.3.2 Set up Layer 2 Isolation .....	59
4.2.3.3 Activate the Guest Profile .....	60
4.2.4 Testing the Wireless Networks .....	60
4.3 How to Set Up and Use Rogue AP Detection .....	61
4.3.1 Set Up and Save a Friendly AP list .....	63
4.3.2 Activate Periodic Rogue AP Detection .....	65
4.3.3 Set Up E-mail Logs .....	66
4.3.4 Configure Your Other Access Points .....	67
4.3.5 Test the Setup .....	67
4.4 Using Multiple MAC Filters and L-2 Isolation Profiles .....	68
4.4.1 Scenario .....	68
4.4.2 Your Requirements .....	68
4.4.3 Setup .....	69
4.4.4 Configure the SERVER_1 Network .....	69
4.4.5 Configure the SERVER_2 Network .....	72
4.4.6 Checking your Settings and Testing the Configuration .....	73
4.4.6.1 Checking Settings .....	73
4.4.6.2 Testing the Configuration .....	73
 <b>Part II: The Web Configurator .....</b>	 <b>75</b>
<b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>System Screens .....</b>	<b>77</b>
5.1 System Overview .....	77
5.2 Configuring General Setup .....	77
5.3 Administrator Authentication on RADIUS .....	78



5.3.1 Configuring Password .....	78
5.4 Configuring Time Setting .....	80
5.5 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List .....	82
<b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>Wireless Configuration.....</b>	<b>83</b>
6.1 Wireless LAN Overview .....	83
6.1.1 BSS .....	83
6.1.2 ESS .....	84
6.2 Wireless LAN Basics .....	84
6.3 Quality of Service .....	85
6.3.1 WMM QoS .....	85
6.3.1.1 WMM QoS Priorities .....	85
6.3.2 ATC .....	85
6.3.3 ATC+WMM .....	86
6.3.3.1 ATC+WMM from LAN to WLAN .....	86
6.3.3.2 ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN .....	87
6.3.4 Type Of Service (ToS) .....	87
6.3.4.1 DiffServ .....	87
6.3.4.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior .....	87
6.3.5 ToS (Type of Service) and WMM QoS .....	88
6.4 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) .....	88
6.4.1 Rapid STP .....	88
6.4.2 STP Terminology .....	89
6.4.3 How STP Works .....	89
6.4.4 STP Port States .....	90
6.5 DFS .....	90
6.6 Wireless Screen Overview .....	90
6.7 Configuring Wireless Settings .....	91
6.7.1 Access Point Mode .....	91
6.7.2 Bridge/Repeater Mode .....	92
6.7.3 AP+Bridge Mode .....	96
6.7.4 MBSSID Mode .....	97
<b>Chapter 7</b>	
<b>Wireless Security Configuration .....</b>	<b>99</b>
7.1 Wireless Security Overview .....	99
7.1.1 Encryption .....	99
7.1.2 Restricted Access .....	99
7.1.3 Hide Identity .....	99
7.1.4 WEP Encryption .....	99
7.2 802.1x Overview .....	100
7.3 EAP Authentication Overview .....	100

7.4 Introduction to WPA .....	100
7.4.1 User Authentication .....	101
7.4.2 Encryption .....	101
7.4.3 WPA(2)-PSK Application Example .....	101
7.5 WPA(2) with External RADIUS Application Example .....	102
7.6 Security Modes .....	103
7.7 Wireless Client WPA Supplicants .....	104
7.8 Wireless Security Effectiveness .....	104
7.9 Configuring Security .....	104
7.9.1 Security: WEP .....	105
7.9.2 Security: 802.1x Only .....	106
7.9.3 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit .....	107
7.9.4 Security: WPA .....	109
7.9.5 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX .....	109
7.9.6 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK-MIX .....	111
7.10 Introduction to RADIUS .....	112
7.11 Configuring RADIUS .....	112
 <b>Chapter 8</b>	
<b>MBSSID and SSID .....</b>	<b>115</b>
8.1 Wireless LAN Infrastructures .....	115
8.1.1 MBSSID .....	115
8.1.2 Notes on Multiple BSS .....	115
8.1.3 Multiple BSS Example .....	115
8.1.4 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example .....	115
8.1.5 Configuring Multiple BSSs .....	116
8.2 SSID .....	118
8.2.1 The SSID Screen .....	118
8.2.2 Configuring SSID .....	119
 <b>Chapter 9</b>	
<b>Other Wireless Configuration .....</b>	<b>123</b>
9.1 Layer-2 Isolation Introduction .....	123
9.2 The Layer-2 Isolation Screen .....	124
9.3 Configuring Layer-2 Isolation .....	125
9.3.1 Layer-2 Isolation Examples .....	126
9.3.1.1 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1 .....	127
9.3.1.2 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2 .....	127
9.4 The MAC Filter Screen .....	128
9.4.1 Configuring MAC Filtering .....	129
9.5 Configuring Roaming .....	130
9.5.1 Requirements for Roaming .....	131

<b>Chapter 10</b>	
<b>IP Screen.....</b>	<b>133</b>
10.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults .....	133
10.2 TCP/IP Parameters .....	133
10.2.1 WAN IP Address Assignment .....	133
10.3 Configuring IP .....	134
<b>Chapter 11</b>	
<b>Rogue AP.....</b>	<b>135</b>
11.1 Rogue AP Introduction .....	135
11.2 Rogue AP Examples .....	135
11.2.1 “Honeypot” Attack .....	136
11.3 Configuring Rogue AP Detection .....	137
11.3.1 Rogue AP: Configuration .....	137
11.3.2 Rogue AP: Friendly AP .....	138
11.3.3 Rogue AP List .....	139
<b>Chapter 12</b>	
<b>Remote Management Screens.....</b>	<b>141</b>
12.1 Remote Management Overview .....	141
12.1.1 Remote Management Limitations .....	141
12.1.2 System Timeout .....	141
12.2 Configuring Telnet .....	142
12.3 Configuring FTP .....	143
12.4 Configuring WWW .....	144
12.5 SNMP .....	145
12.5.1 Supported MIBs .....	146
12.5.2 SNMP Traps .....	147
12.6 SNMP Traps .....	147
12.6.1 Configuring SNMP .....	148
<b>Chapter 13</b>	
<b>Internal RADIUS Server.....</b>	<b>151</b>
13.1 Internal RADIUS Overview .....	151
13.2 Internal RADIUS Server Setting .....	151
13.3 Trusted AP Overview .....	153
13.4 Configuring Trusted AP .....	154
13.5 Configuring Trusted Users .....	155
<b>Chapter 14</b>	
<b>Certificates .....</b>	<b>157</b>
14.1 Certificates Overview .....	157
14.1.1 Advantages of Certificates .....	158

14.2 Self-signed Certificates .....	158
14.3 Verifying a Certificate .....	158
14.3.1 Checking the Fingerprint of a Certificate on Your Computer .....	158
14.4 Configuration Summary .....	159
14.5 My Certificates .....	159
14.6 Certificate File Formats .....	161
14.7 Importing a Certificate .....	162
14.8 Creating a Certificate .....	163
14.9 My Certificate Details .....	165
14.10 Trusted CAs .....	168
14.11 Importing a Trusted CA's Certificate .....	169
14.12 Trusted CA Certificate Details .....	170
 <b>Chapter 15</b>	
<b>Log Screens .....</b>	<b>175</b>
15.1 Configuring View Log .....	175
15.2 Configuring Log Settings .....	176
15.3 Example Log Messages .....	178
15.4 Log Commands .....	179
15.4.1 Configuring What You Want the ZyXEL Device to Log .....	179
15.4.2 Displaying Logs .....	180
15.5 Log Command Example .....	180
 <b>Chapter 16</b>	
<b>VLAN .....</b>	<b>181</b>
16.1 VLAN .....	181
16.1.1 Management VLAN ID .....	181
16.1.2 VLAN Tagging .....	181
16.2 Configuring VLAN .....	182
16.2.1 Wireless VLAN .....	182
16.2.2 RADIUS VLAN .....	184
16.2.3 Configuring Management VLAN Example .....	185
16.2.4 Configuring Microsoft's IAS Server Example .....	188
16.2.4.1 Configuring VLAN Groups .....	188
16.2.4.2 Configuring Remote Access Policies .....	189
16.2.5 Second Rx VLAN ID Example .....	196
16.2.5.1 Second Rx VLAN Setup Example .....	196
 <b>Chapter 17</b>	
<b>Maintenance .....</b>	<b>199</b>
17.1 Maintenance Overview .....	199
17.2 System Status Screen .....	199
17.2.1 System Statistics .....	200

17.3 Association List .....	200
17.4 Channel Usage .....	201
17.5 F/W Upload Screen .....	202
17.6 Configuration Screen .....	204
17.6.1 Backup Configuration .....	204
17.6.2 Restore Configuration .....	205
17.6.3 Back to Factory Defaults .....	206
17.7 Restart Screen .....	206
 <b>Part III: SMT and Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>207</b>
 <b>Chapter 18</b>	
<b>Introducing the SMT .....</b>	<b>209</b>
18.1 Introduction to the SMT .....	209
18.2 Accessing the SMT via the Console Port .....	209
18.2.1 Initial Screen .....	209
18.2.2 Entering the Password .....	210
18.3 Connect to your ZyXEL Device Using Telnet .....	211
18.4 Changing the System Password .....	211
18.5 SMT Menu Overview Example .....	212
18.6 Navigating the SMT Interface .....	212
18.6.1 System Management Terminal Interface Summary .....	214
 <b>Chapter 19</b>	
<b>General Setup.....</b>	<b>215</b>
19.1 General Setup .....	215
19.1.1 Procedure To Configure Menu 1 .....	215
 <b>Chapter 20</b>	
<b>LAN Setup.....</b>	<b>217</b>
20.1 LAN Setup .....	217
20.2 TCP/IP Ethernet Setup .....	217
 <b>Chapter 21</b>	
<b>SNMP Configuration .....</b>	<b>219</b>
21.1 SNMP Configuration .....	219
 <b>Chapter 22</b>	
<b>System Password .....</b>	<b>221</b>
22.1 System Password .....	221

<b>Chapter 23</b>	
<b>System Information and Diagnosis .....</b>	<b>223</b>
23.1 System Status .....	223
23.2 System Information .....	225
23.2.1 System Information .....	225
23.2.2 Console Port Speed .....	226
23.3 Log and Trace .....	226
23.3.1 Viewing Error Log .....	226
23.4 Diagnostic .....	227
 <b>Chapter 24</b>	
<b>Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance .....</b>	<b>229</b>
24.1 Filename Conventions .....	229
24.2 Backup Configuration .....	230
24.2.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt .....	230
24.2.2 Backup Configuration Using TFTP .....	231
24.2.3 Example: TFTP Command .....	232
24.3 Restore Configuration .....	232
24.3.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt Example .....	232
24.3.2 TFTP File Upload .....	233
24.3.3 Example: TFTP Command .....	234
 <b>Chapter 25</b>	
<b>System Maintenance and Information .....</b>	<b>235</b>
25.1 Command Interpreter Mode .....	235
25.1.1 Command Syntax .....	236
25.1.2 Command Usage .....	236
25.1.3 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection .....	236
25.1.3.1 Configuring Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection: Example ..	236
25.2 Time and Date Setting .....	237
25.2.1 Resetting the Time .....	238
25.3 Remote Management Setup .....	238
25.3.1 Telnet .....	238
25.3.2 FTP .....	239
25.3.3 Web .....	239
25.3.4 Remote Management Setup .....	239
25.3.5 Remote Management Limitations .....	241
25.4 System Timeout .....	241
 <b>Chapter 26</b>	
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>243</b>
26.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs .....	243

26.2 ZyXEL Device Access and Login .....	244
26.3 Internet Access .....	246
26.4 Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting .....	247

## **Part IV: Appendices and Index ..... 249**

Appendix A Product Specifications.....	251
Appendix B Setting up Your Computer's IP Address.....	257
Appendix C Wireless LANs .....	269
Appendix D Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions.....	283
Appendix E IP Addresses and Subnetting .....	289
Appendix F Text File Based Auto Configuration.....	297
Appendix G Legal Information.....	305
Appendix H Customer Support.....	309
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>315</b>





# List of Figures

Figure 1 Access Point Application .....	34
Figure 2 Bridge Application .....	35
Figure 3 Repeater Application .....	35
Figure 4 AP+Bridge Application .....	36
Figure 5 Multiple BSSs .....	37
Figure 6 LEDs .....	39
Figure 7 Change Password Screen .....	42
Figure 8 Replace Certificate Screen .....	42
Figure 9 The Status Screen of the Web Configurator .....	43
Figure 10 The Status Screen .....	45
Figure 11 Configuring Wireless LAN .....	50
Figure 12 Tutorial: Example MBSSID Setup .....	52
Figure 13 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Before .....	53
Figure 14 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Change Mode .....	53
Figure 15 Tutorial: WIRELESS > SSID .....	54
Figure 16 Tutorial: VoIP SSID Profile Edit .....	55
Figure 17 Tutorial: VoIP Security .....	56
Figure 18 Tutorial: VoIP Security Profile Edit .....	56
Figure 19 Tutorial: VoIP Security: Updated .....	57
Figure 20 Tutorial: Activate VoIP Profile .....	57
Figure 21 Tutorial: Guest Edit .....	58
Figure 22 Tutorial: Guest Security Profile Edit .....	58
Figure 23 Tutorial: Guest Security: Updated .....	59
Figure 24 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation .....	59
Figure 25 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation Profile .....	60
Figure 26 Tutorial: Activate Guest Profile .....	60
Figure 27 Tutorial: Wireless Network Example .....	62
Figure 28 Tutorial: Friendly AP (Before Data Entry) .....	63
Figure 29 Tutorial: Friendly AP (After Data Entry) .....	64
Figure 30 Tutorial: Configuration .....	64
Figure 31 Tutorial: Warning .....	65
Figure 32 Tutorial: Save Friendly AP list .....	65
Figure 33 Tutorial: Periodic Rogue AP Detection .....	65
Figure 34 Tutorial: Log Settings .....	66
Figure 35 Tutorial: Example Network .....	68
Figure 36 Tutorial: SSID Profile .....	70
Figure 37 Tutorial: SSID Edit .....	71
Figure 38 Tutorial: Layer-2 Isolation Edit .....	71

Figure 39 Tutorial: MAC Filter Edit (SERVER_1) .....	72
Figure 40 Tutorial: SSID Profiles Activated .....	73
Figure 41 Tutorial: SSID Tab Correct Settings .....	73
Figure 42 System > General .....	77
Figure 43 SYSTEM > Password. ....	79
Figure 44 SYSTEM > Time Setting .....	80
Figure 45 Basic Service set .....	83
Figure 46 Extended Service Set .....	84
Figure 47 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field .....	87
Figure 48 Wireless: Access Point .....	91
Figure 49 Bridging Example .....	93
Figure 50 Bridge Loop: Two Bridges Connected to Hub .....	93
Figure 51 Bridge Loop: Bridge Connected to Wired LAN .....	94
Figure 52 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater .....	94
Figure 53 Wireless: AP+Bridge .....	97
Figure 54 EAP Authentication .....	100
Figure 55 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication .....	102
Figure 56 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example .....	103
Figure 57 Wireless > Security .....	105
Figure 58 WIRELESS > Security: WEP .....	106
Figure 59 Security: 802.1x Only .....	107
Figure 60 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit .....	108
Figure 61 Security: WPA .....	109
Figure 62 Security:WPA2 or WPA2-MIX .....	110
Figure 63 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX .....	111
Figure 64 RADIUS .....	112
Figure 65 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example .....	116
Figure 66 Wireless: Multiple BSS .....	116
Figure 67 SSID .....	119
Figure 68 Configuring SSID .....	120
Figure 69 Layer-2 Isolation Application .....	124
Figure 70 WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation .....	125
Figure 71 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration Screen .....	126
Figure 72 Layer-2 Isolation Example Configuration .....	127
Figure 73 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1 .....	127
Figure 74 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2 .....	128
Figure 75 WIRELESS > MAC Filter .....	128
Figure 76 MAC Address Filter .....	129
Figure 77 Roaming Example .....	131
Figure 78 Roaming .....	132
Figure 79 IP Setup .....	134
Figure 80 Rogue AP: Example .....	136
Figure 81 "Honeypot" Attack .....	137

Figure 82 ROGUE AP > Configuration .....	138
Figure 83 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP .....	139
Figure 84 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP .....	140
Figure 85 Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network .....	142
Figure 86 Remote Management: Telnet .....	142
Figure 87 Remote Management: FTP .....	143
Figure 88 Remote Management: WWW .....	144
Figure 89 SNMP Management Model .....	146
Figure 90 Remote Management: SNMP .....	148
Figure 91 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen .....	152
Figure 92 Trusted AP Overview .....	154
Figure 93 Trusted AP Screen .....	155
Figure 94 Trusted Users Screen .....	156
Figure 95 Certificates on Your Computer .....	158
Figure 96 Certificate Details .....	159
Figure 97 My Certificates .....	160
Figure 98 My Certificate Import .....	162
Figure 99 My Certificate Create .....	163
Figure 100 My Certificate Details .....	166
Figure 101 Trusted CAs .....	168
Figure 102 Trusted CA Import .....	170
Figure 103 Trusted CA Details .....	171
Figure 104 View Log .....	175
Figure 105 Log Settings .....	176
Figure 106 WIRELESS VLAN .....	183
Figure 107 RADIUS VLAN .....	184
Figure 108 Management VLAN Configuration Example .....	186
Figure 109 VLAN-Aware Switch - Static VLAN .....	186
Figure 110 VLAN-Aware Switch .....	186
Figure 111 VLAN-Aware Switch - VLAN Status .....	187
Figure 112 VLAN Setup .....	187
Figure 113 New Global Security Group .....	189
Figure 114 Add Group Members .....	189
Figure 115 New Remote Access Policy for VLAN Group .....	190
Figure 116 Specifying Windows-Group Condition .....	190
Figure 117 Adding VLAN Group .....	191
Figure 118 Granting Permissions and User Profile Screens .....	191
Figure 119 Authentication Tab Settings .....	192
Figure 120 Encryption Tab Settings .....	192
Figure 121 Connection Attributes Screen .....	193
Figure 122 RADIUS Attribute Screen .....	193
Figure 123 802 Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Medium-Type .....	194
Figure 124 VLAN ID Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID .....	194

Figure 125 VLAN Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Type .....	195
Figure 126 Completed Advanced Tab .....	195
Figure 127 Second Rx VLAN ID Example .....	196
Figure 128 Configuring SSID: Second Rx VLAN ID Example .....	197
Figure 129 System Status .....	199
Figure 130 System Status: Show Statistics .....	200
Figure 131 Association List .....	201
Figure 132 Channel Usage .....	201
Figure 133 Firmware Upload .....	202
Figure 134 Firmware Upload In Process .....	203
Figure 135 Network Temporarily Disconnected .....	203
Figure 136 Firmware Upload Error .....	204
Figure 137 Configuration .....	204
Figure 138 Configuration Upload Successful .....	205
Figure 139 Network Temporarily Disconnected .....	205
Figure 140 Configuration Upload Error .....	206
Figure 141 Reset Warning Message .....	206
Figure 142 Restart Screen .....	206
Figure 143 Initial Screen .....	210
Figure 144 Password Screen .....	211
Figure 145 Login Screen .....	211
Figure 146 Menu 23 System Password .....	212
Figure 147 SMT Main Menu .....	213
Figure 148 Menu 1 General Setup .....	215
Figure 149 Menu 3 LAN Setup .....	217
Figure 150 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup .....	217
Figure 151 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration .....	219
Figure 152 Menu 23 System Password .....	221
Figure 153 Menu 24 System Maintenance .....	223
Figure 154 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status .....	224
Figure 155 Menu 24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed .....	225
Figure 156 Menu 24.2.1 System Information: Information .....	225
Figure 157 Menu 24.2.2 System Maintenance: Change Console Port Speed .....	226
Figure 158 Menu 24.3 System Maintenance: Log and Trace .....	227
Figure 159 Sample Error and Information Messages .....	227
Figure 160 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance: Diagnostic .....	227
Figure 161 FTP Session Example .....	231
Figure 162 FTP Session Example .....	233
Figure 163 Menu 24 System Maintenance .....	235
Figure 164 Valid CI Commands .....	236
Figure 165 Menu 24.10 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting .....	237
Figure 166 Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network .....	239
Figure 167 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control .....	240

Figure 168 Wall-mounting Example .....	254
Figure 169 Masonry Plug and M4 Tap Screw .....	254
Figure 170 WIndows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration .....	258
Figure 171 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address .....	259
Figure 172 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration .....	260
Figure 173 Windows XP: Start Menu .....	261
Figure 174 Windows XP: Control Panel .....	261
Figure 175 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties .....	262
Figure 176 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties .....	262
Figure 177 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings .....	263
Figure 178 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties .....	264
Figure 179 Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu .....	265
Figure 180 Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP .....	265
Figure 181 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu .....	266
Figure 182 Macintosh OS X: Network .....	267
Figure 183 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network .....	269
Figure 184 Basic Service Set .....	270
Figure 185 Infrastructure WLAN .....	271
Figure 186 RTS/CTS .....	272
Figure 187 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example .....	279
Figure 188 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication .....	280
Figure 189 Pop-up Blocker .....	283
Figure 190 Internet Options: Privacy .....	284
Figure 191 Internet Options: Privacy .....	285
Figure 192 Pop-up Blocker Settings .....	285
Figure 193 Internet Options: Security .....	286
Figure 194 Security Settings - Java Scripting .....	287
Figure 195 Security Settings - Java .....	287
Figure 196 Java (Sun) .....	288
Figure 197 Network Number and Host ID .....	290
Figure 198 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting .....	292
Figure 199 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting .....	293
Figure 200 Text File Based Auto Configuration .....	297
Figure 201 Configuration File Format .....	299
Figure 202 WEP Configuration File Example .....	300
Figure 203 802.1X Configuration File Example .....	301
Figure 204 WPA-PSK Configuration File Example .....	301
Figure 205 WPA Configuration File Example .....	302
Figure 206 Wlan Configuration File Example .....	303



# List of Tables

Table 1 Models Covered .....	33
Table 2 LEDs .....	39
Table 3 The Status Screen .....	45
Table 4 Tutorial: Example Information .....	52
Table 5 Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information .....	62
Table 6 Tutorial: Friendly AP Information .....	63
Table 7 Tutorial: SSID Profile Security Settings .....	69
Table 8 Tutorial: Example Network MAC Addresses .....	69
Table 9 Tutorial: Example User MAC Addresses .....	69
Table 10 Tutorial: SERVER_2 Network Information .....	72
Table 11 System > General .....	77
Table 12 Password .....	79
Table 13 SYSTEM > Time Setting .....	81
Table 14 Default Time Servers .....	82
Table 15 WMM QoS Priorities .....	85
Table 16 Typical Packet Sizes .....	86
Table 17 Automatic Traffic Classifier Priorities .....	86
Table 18 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (LAN to WLAN) .....	87
Table 19 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (WLAN to LAN) .....	87
Table 20 ToS and IEEE 802.1d to WMM QoS Priority Level Mapping .....	88
Table 21 STP Path Costs .....	89
Table 22 STP Port States .....	90
Table 23 Wireless: Access Point .....	91
Table 24 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater .....	95
Table 25 Security Modes .....	103
Table 26 Wireless Security Levels .....	104
Table 27 WIRELESS > Security .....	105
Table 28 Security: WEP .....	106
Table 29 Security: 802.1x Only .....	107
Table 30 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit .....	108
Table 31 Security: WPA .....	109
Table 32 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX .....	110
Table 33 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX .....	111
Table 34 RADIUS .....	112
Table 35 Wireless: Multiple BSS .....	117
Table 36 SSID .....	119
Table 37 Configuring SSID .....	120
Table 38 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation .....	125

Table 39 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration .....	126
Table 40 WIRELESS > MAC Filter .....	129
Table 41 MAC Address Filter .....	130
Table 42 Private IP Address Ranges .....	133
Table 43 IP Setup .....	134
Table 44 ROGUE AP > Configuration .....	138
Table 45 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP .....	139
Table 46 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP .....	140
Table 47 Remote Management Overview .....	141
Table 48 Remote Management: Telnet .....	142
Table 49 Remote Management: FTP .....	143
Table 50 Remote Management: WWW .....	144
Table 51 SNMP Traps .....	147
Table 52 SNMP Interface Index to Physical and Virtual Port Mapping .....	147
Table 53 Remote Management: SNMP .....	148
Table 54 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen Setting .....	152
Table 55 Trusted AP .....	155
Table 56 Trusted Users .....	156
Table 57 My Certificates .....	160
Table 58 My Certificate Import .....	162
Table 59 My Certificate Create .....	163
Table 60 My Certificate Details .....	166
Table 61 Trusted CAs .....	169
Table 62 Trusted CA Import .....	170
Table 63 Trusted CA Details .....	171
Table 64 View Log .....	175
Table 65 Log Settings .....	177
Table 66 System Maintenance Logs .....	178
Table 67 ICMP Notes .....	178
Table 68 Sys log .....	179
Table 69 Log Categories and Available Settings .....	179
Table 70 WIRELESS VLAN .....	183
Table 71 RADIUS VLAN .....	185
Table 72 Standard RADIUS Attributes .....	188
Table 73 System Status .....	199
Table 74 System Status: Show Statistics .....	200
Table 75 Association List .....	201
Table 76 Channel Usage .....	202
Table 77 Firmware Upload .....	202
Table 78 Restore Configuration .....	205
Table 79 SMT Menus Overview .....	212
Table 80 Main Menu Commands .....	213
Table 81 Main Menu Summary .....	214



Table 82 Menu 1 General Setup .....	215
Table 83 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup .....	218
Table 84 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration .....	219
Table 85 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status .....	224
Table 86 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information .....	225
Table 87 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance Menu: Diagnostic .....	228
Table 88 Filename Conventions .....	230
Table 89 General Commands for Third Party FTP Clients .....	231
Table 90 General Commands for Third Party TFTP Clients .....	232
Table 91 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection Commands .....	236
Table 92 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting .....	237
Table 93 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control .....	240
Table 94 Hardware Specifications .....	251
Table 95 Firmware Specifications .....	252
Table 96 North American Plug Standards .....	255
Table 97 European Plug Standards .....	255
Table 98 United Kingdom Plug Standards .....	255
Table 99 Australia and New Zealand Plug Standards .....	255
Table 100 Power over Ethernet Injector Specifications .....	255
Table 101 Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments .....	256
Table 102 IEEE 802.11g .....	273
Table 103 Wireless Security Levels .....	274
Table 104 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types .....	277
Table 105 Wireless Security Relational Matrix .....	280
Table 106 Subnet Masks .....	290
Table 107 Subnet Masks .....	291
Table 108 Maximum Host Numbers .....	291
Table 109 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation .....	291
Table 110 Subnet 1 .....	293
Table 111 Subnet 2 .....	294
Table 112 Subnet 3 .....	294
Table 113 Subnet 4 .....	294
Table 114 Eight Subnets .....	294
Table 115 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning .....	295
Table 116 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning .....	295
Table 117 Auto Configuration by DHCP .....	298
Table 118 Manual Configuration .....	298
Table 119 Configuration via SNMP .....	298
Table 120 Displaying the File Version .....	299
Table 121 Displaying the File Version .....	299
Table 122 Displaying the Auto Configuration Status .....	300



---

# PART I

# Introduction

---

Introducing the ZyXEL Device (33)

Introducing the Web Configurator (41)

Status Screens (45)

Tutorial (49)



# Introducing the ZyXEL Device

This chapter introduces the main applications and features of the ZyXEL Device. It also introduces the ways you can manage the ZyXEL Device.

## 1.1 Introducing the ZyXEL Device

Your ZyXEL Device extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users.

It is highly versatile, supporting up to eight BSSIDs simultaneously. The Quality of Service (QoS) features allow you to prioritize time-sensitive or highly important applications such as VoIP.

Multiple security profiles allow you to easily assign different types of security to groups of users. The ZyXEL Device controls network access with MAC address filtering, rogue AP detection, layer 2 isolation and an internal authentication server. It also provides a high level of network traffic security, supporting IEEE 802.1x, Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), WPA2 and WEP data encryption.

Your ZyXEL Device is easy to install, configure and use. The embedded Web-based configurator enables simple, straightforward management and maintenance.

See the Quick Start Guide for instructions on how to make hardware connections.

At the time of writing, this User's Guide covers the following models.

**Table 1** Models Covered

NWA-3160: IEEE 802.11a/b/g Business WLAN Access Point
NWA-3163: IEEE 802.11b/g Business WLAN Access Point

## 1.2 Applications for the ZyXEL Device

The ZyXEL Device can be configured to use the following WLAN operating modes

- 1 AP
- 2 Bridge/Repeater
- 3 AP+Bridge
- 4 MBSSID

Applications for each operating mode are shown below.

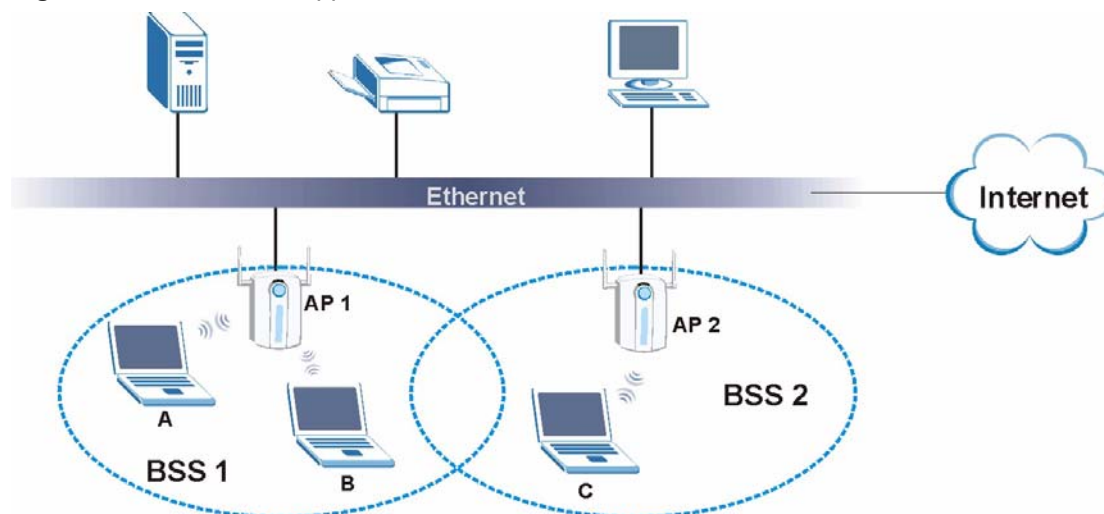


**A different channel should be configured for each WLAN interface to reduce the effects of radio interference.**

### 1.2.1 Access Point

The ZyXEL Device is an ideal access solution for wireless Internet connection. A typical Internet access application for your ZyXEL Device is shown as follows. Stations A, B and C can access the wired network through the ZyXEL Devices.

**Figure 1** Access Point Application



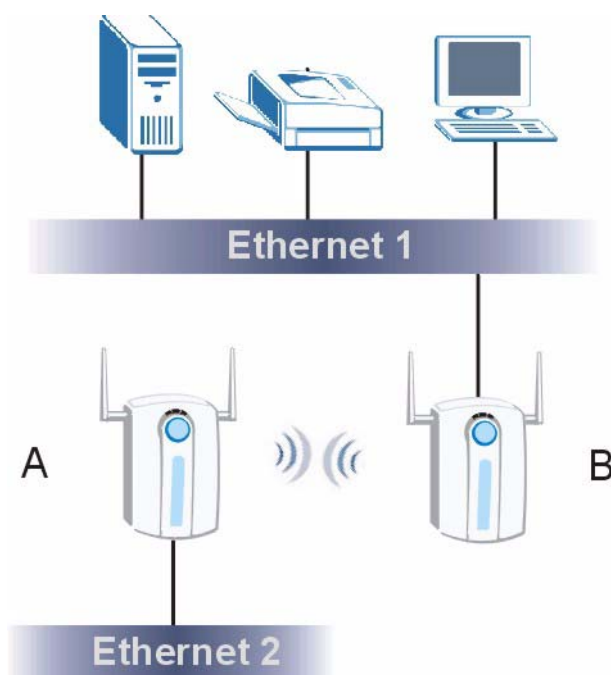
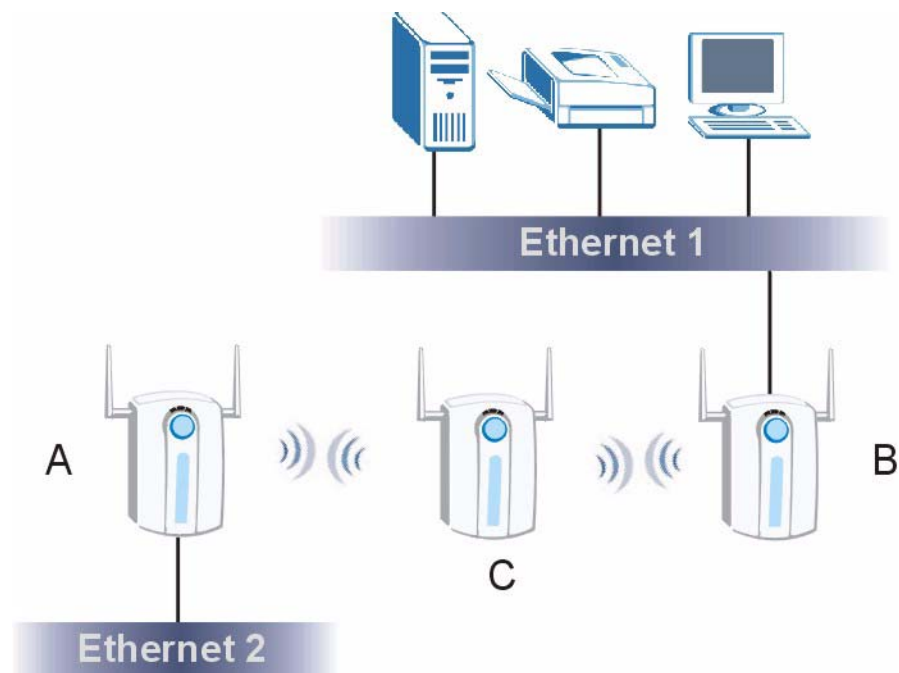
### 1.2.2 Bridge / Repeater

The ZyXEL Device can act as a wireless network bridge and establish wireless links with other APs. In the figure below, the two ZyXEL Devices (**A** and **B**) are connected to independent wired networks and have a bridge connection (**A** can communicate with **B**) at the same time. A ZyXEL Device in repeater mode (**C**) has no Ethernet connection. When the ZyXEL Device is in bridge mode, you should enable STP to prevent bridge loops.

When the ZyXEL Device is in **Bridge / Repeater** mode, security between APs (the Wireless Distribution System or WDS) is independent of the security between the wireless stations and the AP. If you do not enable WDS security, traffic between APs is not encrypted. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 6.7.2 on page 92](#) for more details.

Once the security settings of peer sides match one another, the connection between devices is made.

At the time of writing, WDS security is compatible with other ZyXEL access points only. Refer to your other access point's documentation for details.

**Figure 2** Bridge Application**Figure 3** Repeater Application

### 1.2.3 AP + Bridge

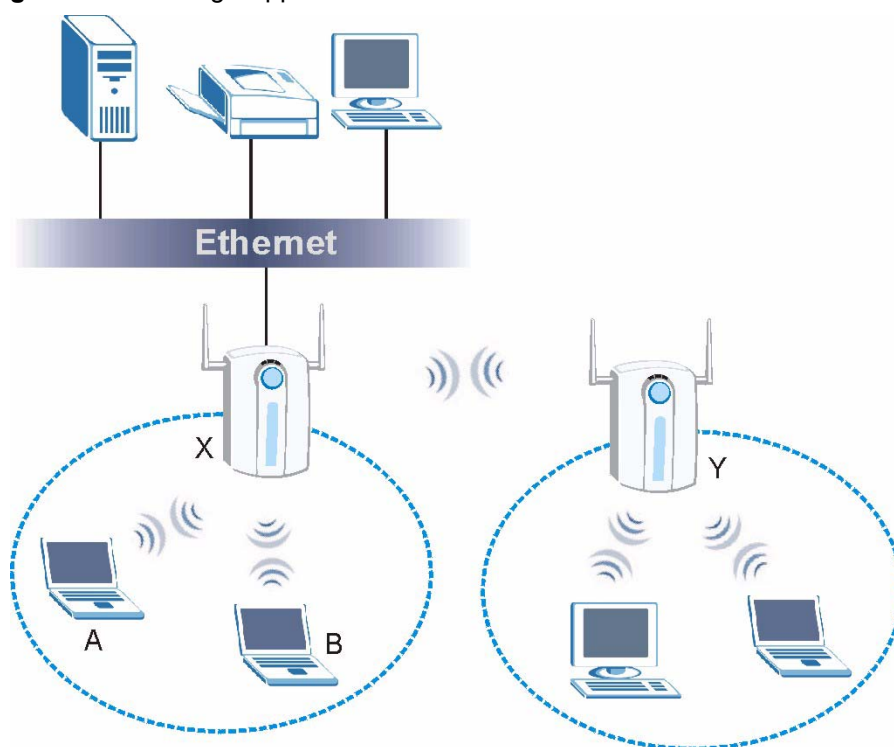
In **AP+Bridge** mode, the ZyXEL Device supports both AP and bridge connection at the same time.

In the figure below, **A** and **B** use **X** as an **AP** to access the wired network, while **X** and **Y** communicate in bridge mode.

When the ZyXEL Device is in **AP + Bridge** mode, security between APs (the Wireless Distribution System or WDS) is independent of the security between the wireless stations and the AP. If you do not enable WDS security, traffic between APs is not encrypted. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 6.7.3 on page 96](#) for more details.

Unless specified, the term “security settings” refers to the traffic between the wireless stations and the ZyXEL Device.

**Figure 4** AP+Bridge Application



## 1.2.4 MBSSID

A BSS (Basic Service Set) is the set of devices forming a single wireless network (usually an access point and one or more wireless clients). An SSID (Service Set Identifier) is the name of a BSS. In MBSSID (Multiple BSS) mode, the ZyXEL Device provides multiple virtual APs, each forming its own BSS and using its own individual SSID profile.

You can configure up to sixteen SSID profiles, and have up to eight active at any one time.

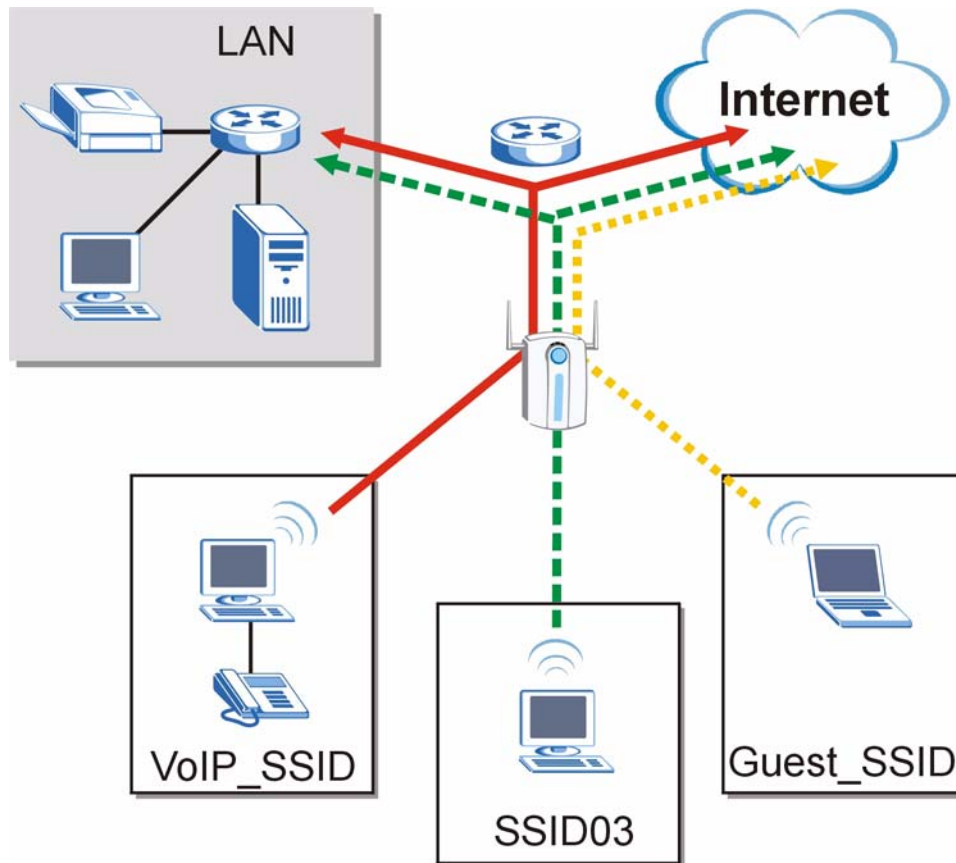
You can assign different wireless and security settings to each SSID profile. This allows you to compartmentalize groups of users, set varying access privileges, and prioritize network traffic to and from certain BSSs.

To the wireless clients in the network, each SSID appears to be a different access point. As in any wireless network, clients can associate only with the SSIDs for which they have the correct security settings.



For example, you might want to set up a wireless network in your office where Internet telephony (Voice over IP, or VoIP) users have priority. You also want a regular wireless network for standard users, as well as a ‘guest’ wireless network for visitors. In the following figure, **VoIP\_SSID** users have Quality of Service (QoS) priority, **SSID03** is the wireless network for standard users, and **Guest\_SSID** is the wireless network for guest users. In this example, the guest user is forbidden access to the wired LAN behind the AP and can access only the Internet.

**Figure 5** Multiple BSSs



### 1.2.5 Pre-Configured SSID Profiles

The ZyXEL Device has two pre-configured SSID profiles.

- 1 **VoIP\_SSID**. This profile is intended for use by wireless clients requiring the highest QoS (Quality of Service) level for VoIP (Voice over IP) telephony and other applications requiring low latency. The QoS level of this profile is not user-configurable. See [Chapter 6 on page 83](#) for more information on QoS.
- 2 **Guest\_SSID**. This profile is intended for use by visitors and others who require access to certain resources on the network (an Internet gateway or a network printer, for example) but must not have access to the rest of the network. Layer 2 isolation is enabled (see [Section 9.1 on page 123](#)), and QoS is set to **NONE**. Intra-BSS traffic blocking is also enabled (see [Section 6.1.1 on page 83](#)). These fields are all user-configurable.

## 1.3 Ways to Manage the ZyXEL Device

Use any of the following methods to manage the ZyXEL Device.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the ZyXEL Device using a (supported) web browser.
- Command Line Interface. Line commands are mostly used for troubleshooting by service engineers.
- SMT. System Management Terminal is a text-based configuration menu that you can use to configure your device. Use Telnet to access the SMT.
- FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup and restore.
- SNMP. The device can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See the SNMP chapter in this User's Guide.

## 1.4 Good Habits for Managing the ZyXEL Device

Do the following things regularly to make the ZyXEL Device more secure and to manage it more effectively.

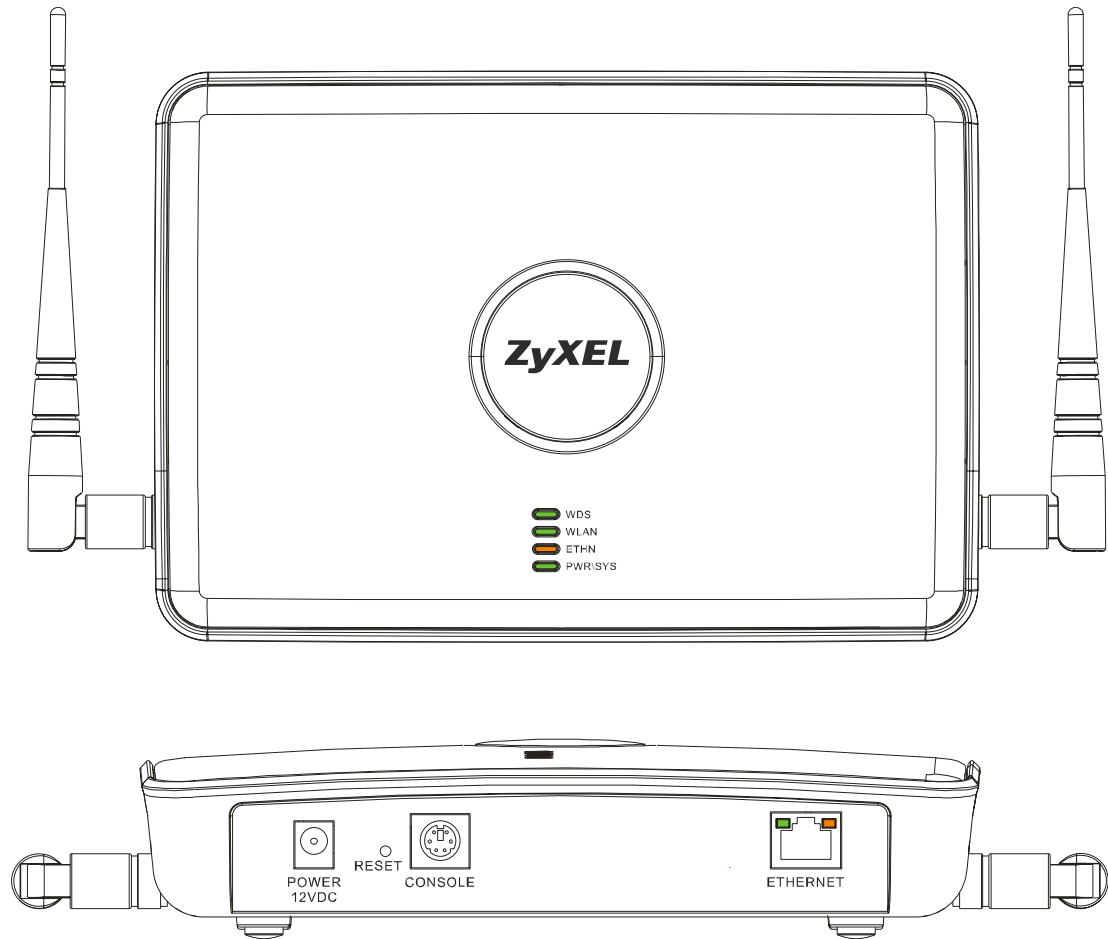
- Change the password often. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the ZyXEL Device to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you won't have to totally re-configure the ZyXEL Device; you can simply restore your last configuration.

## 1.5 Hardware Connections

See your Quick Start Guide for information on making hardware connections.

## 1.6 LEDs

**Figure 6** LEDs



**Table 2** LEDs

LABEL	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
WDS	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device is in AP+Bridge or Bridge/Repeater mode, and has successfully established a Wireless Distribution System (WDS) connection.
		Off	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The ZyXEL Device is in Access Point or MBSSID mode and is functioning normally.</li> </ul> or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The ZyXEL Device is in AP+Bridge or Bridge/Repeater mode and has not established a Wireless Distribution System (WDS) connection.</li> </ul>
WLAN	Green	On	The wireless LAN is active.
		Blinking	The wireless LAN is active, and transmitting or receiving data.
	Off		The wireless LAN is not active.

**Table 2** LEDs (continued)

LABEL	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
ETHERNET	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device has a 10 Mbps Ethernet connection.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device has a 10 Mbps Ethernet connection and is sending or receiving data.
	Yellow	On	The ZyXEL Device has a 100 Mbps Ethernet connection.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device has a 100 Mbps Ethernet connection and is sending/receiving data.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device does not have an Ethernet connection.
POWER/SYS	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power and functioning properly.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device is not receiving power.
	Red	Blinking	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the LED blinks during the boot up process, the system is starting up.</li></ul> or <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the LED blinks after the boot up process, the system has failed.</li></ul>
		Off	The ZyXEL Device successfully boots up.

# Introducing the Web Configurator

This chapter describes how to access the ZyXEL Device's web configurator and provides an overview of its screens.

## 2.1 Accessing the Web Configurator

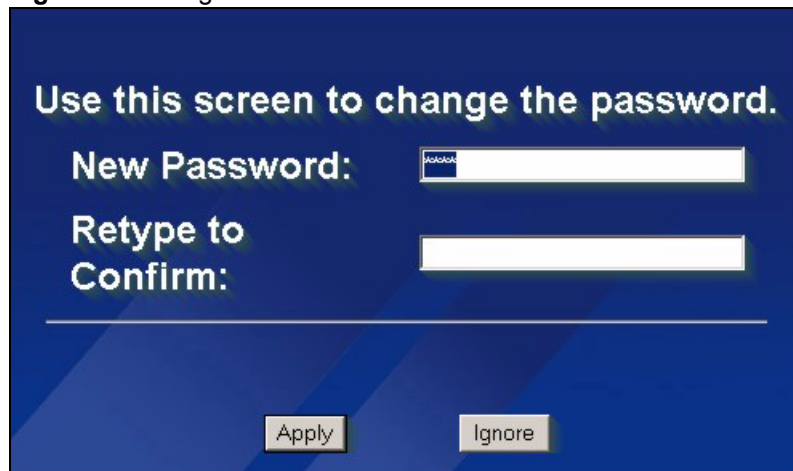
- 1 Make sure your hardware is properly connected and prepare your computer or computer network to connect to the ZyXEL Device (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Launch your web browser.
- 3 Type "192.168.1.2" as the URL (default).
- 4 Type "1234" (default) as the password and click **Login**. In some versions, the default password appears automatically - if this is the case, click **Login**.
- 5 You should see a screen asking you to change your password (highly recommended) as shown next. Type a new password (and retype it to confirm) then click **Apply**. Alternatively, click **Ignore**.



---

**If you do not change the password, the following screen appears every time you login.**

---

**Figure 7** Change Password ScreenThe screenshot shows a web interface with a dark blue background. At the top, it says "Use this screen to change the password." Below this, there are two labels: "New Password:" and "Retype to Confirm:". Each label is followed by a white text input field. The "New Password:" field has a small blue icon on its left. At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Ignore".

- 6** Click **Apply** in the **Replace Certificate** screen to create a certificate using your ZyXEL Device's MAC address that will be specific to this device.

**Figure 8** Replace Certificate ScreenThe screenshot shows a web interface with a dark blue background. At the top, it says "Replace Factory Default Certificate". Below this, there is a paragraph of text: "The factory default certificate is common to all NWA models. Click Apply to create a certificate using your NWA's MAC address that will be specific to this device." Below the text is a horizontal line. At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Ignore".

You should now see the **Status** screen. See [Chapter 2 on page 41](#) for details about the **Status** screen.



The management session automatically times out when the time period set in the **Administrator Inactivity Timer** field expires (default five minutes). Simply log back into the ZyXEL Device if this happens.

## 2.2 Resetting the ZyXEL Device

If you forget your password or cannot access the web configurator, you will need to use the **RESET** button. This replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all the settings you previously configured. The password will be reset to 1234.

## 2.2.1 Methods of Restoring Factory-Defaults

You can erase the current configuration and restore factory defaults in three ways:

Use the **RESET** button to upload the default configuration file. Hold this button in for about 10 seconds (the lights will begin to blink). Use this method for cases when the password or IP address of the ZyXEL Device is not known.

Use the web configurator to restore defaults (refer to [Chapter 17 on page 199](#)).

Transfer the configuration file to your ZyXEL Device using FTP. See the section on SMT configuration for more information.

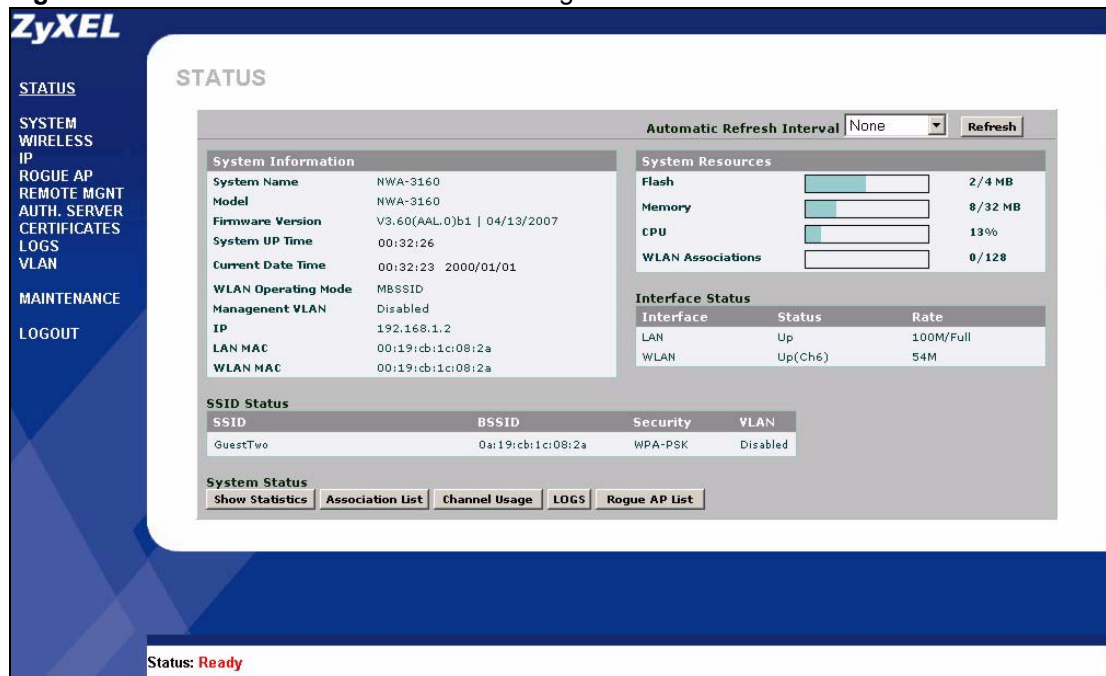
## 2.3 Navigating the Web Configurator

The following summarizes how to navigate the web configurator from the **Status** screen.

Click **LOGOUT** at any time to exit the web configurator.

Check the status bar at the bottom of the screen when you click **Apply** or **OK** to verify that the configuration has been updated.

**Figure 9** The Status Screen of the Web Configurator



Click the links on the left of the screen to configure advanced features such as **SYSTEM** (General Setup, Password and Time Zone), **WIRELESS** (Wireless, SSID, Security, RADIUS, Layer-2 Isolation, MAC Filter), **IP**, **ROGUE AP** (Configuration, Friendly AP, Rogue AP), **REMOTE MGNT** (Telnet, FTP, WWW and SNMP), **AUTH. SERVER** (Setting, Trusted AP, Trusted Users), **CERTIFICATES** (My Certificates, Trusted CAs), **LOGS** (View Logs and Log Settings) and **VLAN** (Wireless VLAN and RADIUS VLAN).

Click **MAINTENANCE** to view information about your ZyXEL Device or upgrade configuration and firmware files. Maintenance features include **Status** (Statistics), **Association List**, **Channel Usage**, **F/W** (firmware) **Upload**, **Configuration** (Backup, Restore and Default) and **Restart**.



# Status Screens

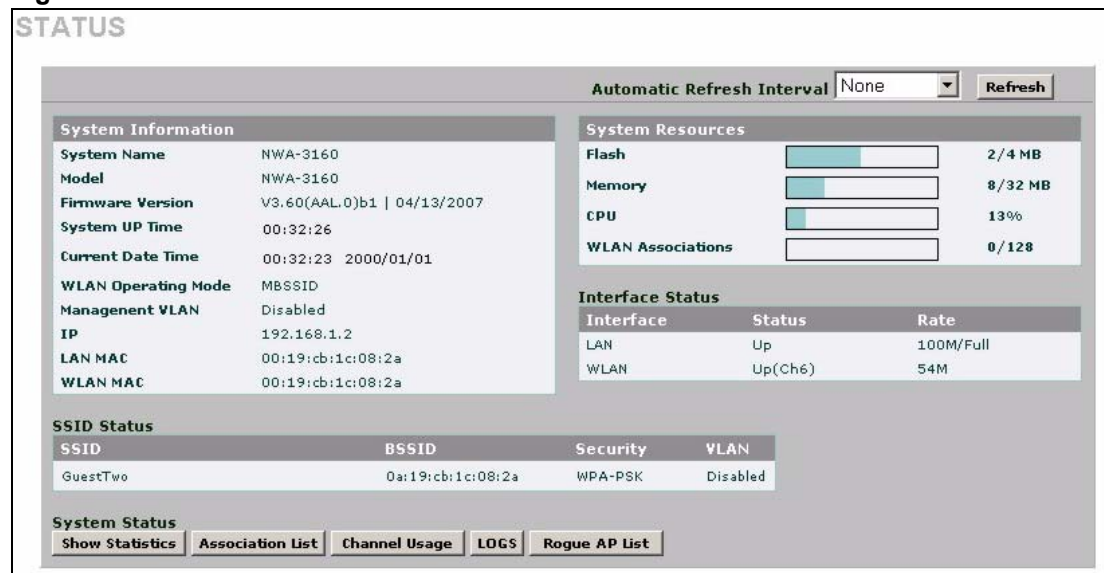
The **Status** screen displays when you log into the ZyXEL Device, or click **STATUS** in the navigation menu.

Use the **Status** screens to look at the current status of the device, system resources, interfaces and SSID status. The **Status** screen also provides detailed information about associated wireless clients, channel usage, logs and detected rogue APs.

## 3.1 The Status Screen

Click **Status**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 10** The Status Screen



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 3** The Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Automatic Refresh Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen immediately.
System Information	
System Name	This field displays the ZyXEL Device system name. It is used for identification. You can change this in the <b>System &gt; General</b> screen's <b>System Name</b> field.

**Table 3** The Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Model	This field displays the ZyXEL Device's exact model name.
Firmware Version	This field displays the current version of the firmware inside the device. It also shows the date the firmware version was created. You can change the firmware version by uploading new firmware in <b>Maintenance &gt; F/W Upload</b> .
System Up Time	This field displays the elapsed time since the ZyXEL Device was turned on.
Current Date Time	This field displays the date and time configured on the ZyXEL Device. You can change this in the <b>System &gt; Time Setting</b> screen.
WLAN Operating Mode	This field displays the current operating mode of the first wireless module ( <b>AP</b> , <b>Bridge / Repeater</b> , <b>AP + Bridge</b> or <b>MBSSID</b> ). You can change the operating mode in the <b>Wireless &gt; Wireless</b> screen.
Management VLAN	This field displays the management VLAN ID if VLAN is active, or <b>Disabled</b> if it is not active. You can enable or disable VLAN, or change the management VLAN ID, in the <b>VLAN &gt; Wireless VLAN</b> screen.
IP	This field displays the current IP address of the ZyXEL Device on the network.
LAN MAC	This displays the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the ZyXEL Device on the LAN. Every network device has a unique MAC address which identifies it across the network.
WLAN MAC	This displays the MAC address of the wireless module.
System Resources	
Flash	This field displays the amount of the ZyXEL Device's flash memory currently in use. The flash memory is used to store firmware and SSID profiles.
Memory	This field displays what percentage of the ZyXEL Device's volatile memory is currently in use. The higher the memory usage, the more likely the ZyXEL Device is to slow down. Some memory is required just to start the ZyXEL Device and to run the web configurator.
CPU	This field displays what percentage of the ZyXEL Device's processing ability is currently being used. The higher the CPU usage, the more likely the ZyXEL Device is to slow down.
WLAN Associations	This field displays the number of wireless clients currently associated with the wireless module. Each wireless module supports up to 128 concurrent associations.
Interface Status	
Interface	This column displays each interface of the ZyXEL Device.
Status	This field indicates whether or not the ZyXEL Device is using the interface. For each interface, this field displays <b>Up</b> when the ZyXEL Device is using the interface and <b>Down</b> when the ZyXEL Device is not using the interface.
Rate	For the LAN port this displays the port speed and duplex setting. For the WLAN interface, it displays the downstream and upstream transmission rate or <b>N/A</b> if the interface is not in use.
SSID Status	
SSID	This field displays the SSID(s) currently used by the wireless module.
BSSID	This field displays the MAC address of the wireless adaptor.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless security used by each SSID.

**Table 3** The Status Screen

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
VLAN	This field displays the VLAN ID of each SSID in use, or Disabled if the SSID does not use VLAN.
System Status	
Show Statistics	Click this link to view port status and packet specific statistics. See <a href="#">Section 17.2.1 on page 200</a> .
Association List	Click this to see a list of wireless clients currently associated to each of the ZyXEL Device's wireless modules. See <a href="#">Section 17.3 on page 200</a> .
Channel Usage	Click this to see which wireless channels are currently in use in the local area. See <a href="#">Section 17.4 on page 201</a> .
Logs	Click this to see a list of logs produced by the ZyXEL Device. See <a href="#">Section 15.1 on page 175</a> .
Rogue AP List	Click this to see a list of unauthorized access points in the local area. See <a href="#">Section 11.3.3 on page 139</a> .



# Tutorial

This chapter first provides an overview of how to configure the wireless LAN on your ZyXEL Device, and then gives step-by-step guidelines showing how to configure your ZyXEL Device for some example scenarios.

## 4.1 How to Configure the Wireless LAN

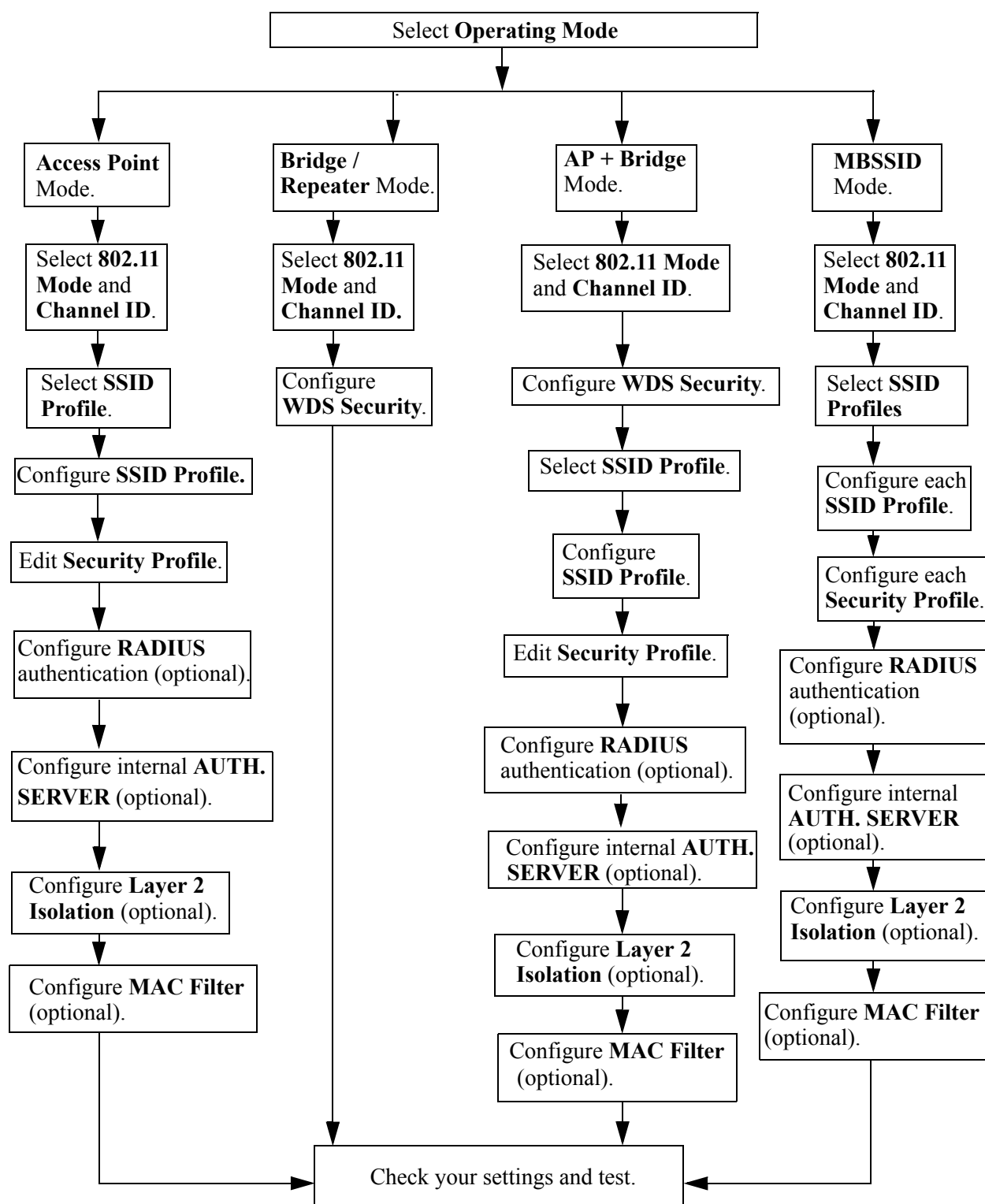
This section shows how to choose which wireless operating mode you should use on the ZyXEL Device, and the steps you should take to set up the wireless LAN in each wireless mode. See [Section 4.1.3 on page 51](#) for links to more information on each step.

### 4.1.1 Choosing the Wireless Mode

- Use **Access Point** operating mode if you want to allow wireless clients to access your wired network, all using the same security and Quality of Service (QoS) settings. See [Section 1.2.1 on page 34](#) for details.
- Use **Bridge/Repeater** operating mode if you want to use the ZyXEL Device to communicate with other access points. See [Section 1.2.2 on page 34](#) for details.  
The ZyXEL Device is a bridge when other APs access your wired Ethernet network through the ZyXEL Device.  
The ZyXEL Device is a repeater when it has no Ethernet connection and allows other APs to communicate with one another through the ZyXEL Device.
- Use **AP+Bridge** operating mode if you want to use the ZyXEL Device as an access point (see above) while also communicating with other access points. See [Section 1.2.3 on page 35](#) for details.
- Use **MBSSID** operating mode if you want to use the ZyXEL Device as an access point with some groups of users having different security or QoS settings from other groups of users. See [Section 1.2.4 on page 36](#) for details.

### 4.1.2 Wireless LAN Configuration Overview

The following figure shows the steps you should take to configure the wireless settings according to the operating mode you select. Use the Web Configurator to set up your ZyXEL Device's wireless network (see your Quick Start Guide for information on setting up your ZyXEL Device and accessing the Web Configurator).

**Figure 11** Configuring Wireless LAN

### 4.1.3 Further Reading

Use these links to find more information on the steps:

- Choosing **802.11 Mode**: see [Section 6.7.1 on page 91](#).
- Choosing a wireless **Channel ID**: see [Section 6.7.1 on page 91](#).
- Selecting and configuring **SSID profile(s)**: see [Section 6.7.1 on page 91](#) and [Section 8.2.1 on page 118](#).
- Configuring and activating **WDS Security**: see [Section 6.7.2 on page 92](#).
- Editing **Security Profile(s)**: see [Section 7.9 on page 104](#).
- Configuring an external **RADIUS** server: see [Section 7.11 on page 112](#).
- Configuring and activating the internal **AUTH. SERVER**: see [Section 7.4.1 on page 101](#) and [Chapter 13 on page 151](#).
- Configuring **Layer 2 Isolation**: see [Section 9.3 on page 125](#).
- Configuring **MAC Filtering**: see [Section 9.4 on page 128](#).

## 4.2 How to Configure Multiple Wireless Networks

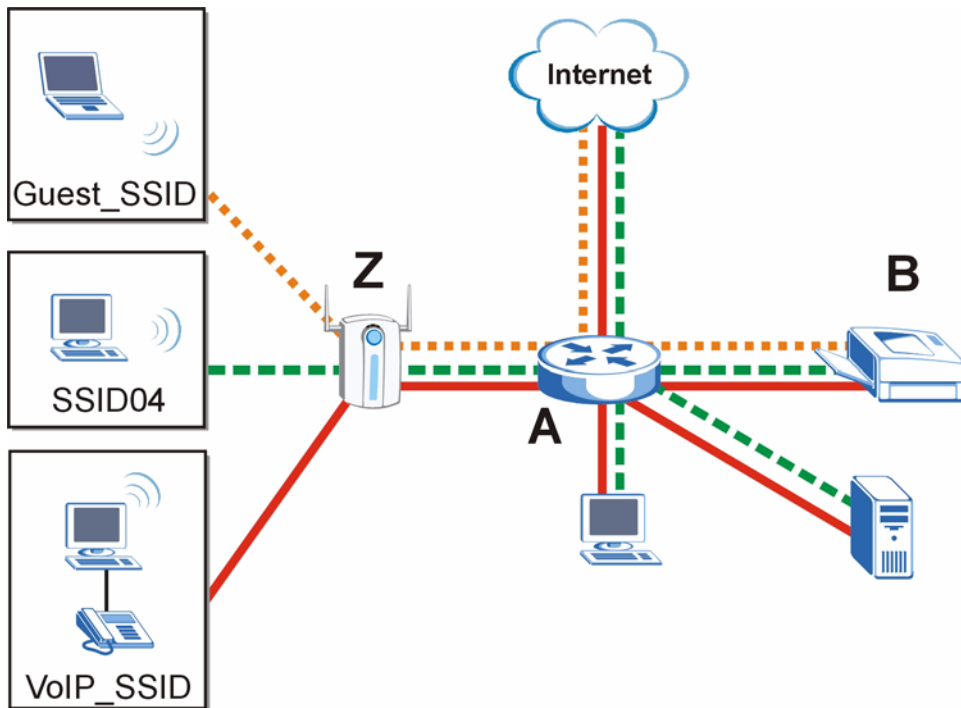
In this example, you have been using your ZyXEL Device as an access point for your office network (See your Quick Start Guide for information on how to set up your ZyXEL Device in Access Point mode). Now your network is expanding and you want to make use of the MBSSID feature (see [Section 8.1 on page 115](#)) to provide multiple wireless networks. Each wireless network will cater for a different type of user.

You want to make three wireless networks: one standard office wireless network with all the same settings you already have, another wireless network with high Quality of Service (QoS) settings for Voice over IP users, and a guest network that allows visitors to your office to access only the Internet and the network printer.

To do this, you will take the following steps:

- 1** Change the operating mode from Access Point to MBSSID and reactivate the standard network.
- 2** Configure a wireless network for Voice over IP users.
- 3** Configure a wireless network for guests to your office.

The following figure shows the multiple networks you want to set up. Your ZyXEL Device is marked **Z**, the main network router is marked **A**, and your network printer is marked **B**.

**Figure 12** Tutorial: Example MBSSID Setup

The standard network (**SSID04**) has access to all resources. The VoIP network (**VoIP\_SSID**) has access to all resources and a high Quality of Service (QoS) setting (see [Chapter 6 on page 83](#) for information on QoS). The guest network (**Guest\_SSID**) has access to the Internet and the network printer only, and a low QoS setting.

To configure these settings, you need to know the MAC (Media Access Control) addresses of the devices you want to allow users of the guest network to access. The following table shows the addresses used in this example.

**Table 4** Tutorial: Example Information

Network router ( <b>A</b> ) MAC address	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA
Network printer ( <b>B</b> ) MAC address	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00

### 4.2.1 Change the Operating Mode

Log in to the ZyXEL Device (see [Section 2.1 on page 41](#)). Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The **Wireless** screen appears. In this example, the ZyXEL Device is using **Access Point** operating mode, and is currently set to use the **SSID04** profile.



**Figure 13** Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Before

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>Operating Mode</b> 802.11 Mode		Access Point 802.11b+g			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode Choose Channel ID		Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan			
RTS/CTS Threshold		2346 (256 ~ 2346)			
Fragmentation Threshold		2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)			
Output Power		100%			
SSID Profile		SSID04			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Roaming					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

Select **MBSSID** from the **Operating Mode** drop-down list box. The screen displays as follows.

**Figure 14** Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Change Mode

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>Operating Mode</b> 802.11 Mode		MBSSID 802.11b+g			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode Choose Channel ID		Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan			
RTS/CTS Threshold		2346 (256 ~ 2346)			
Fragmentation Threshold		2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)			
Output Power		100%			
Select SSID Profile					
Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID05	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Roaming					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

This **Select SSID Profile** table allows you to activate or deactivate SSID profiles. Your wireless network was previously using the **SSID04** profile, so select **SSID04** in one of the **Profile** list boxes (number **3** in this example).

Select the **Index** box for the entry and click **Apply** to activate the profile. Your standard wireless network (**SSID04**) is now accessible to your wireless clients as before. You do not need to configure anything else for your standard network.

## 4.2.2 Configure the VoIP Network

Next, click **WIRELESS > SSID**. The following screen displays. Note that the **SSID04** SSID profile (the standard network) is using the **security01** security profile. You cannot change this security profile without changing the standard network's parameters, so when you set up security for the **VoIP\_SSID** and **Guest\_SSID** profiles you will need to set different security profiles.

**Figure 15** Tutorial: WIRELESS > SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter			
	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	l2isolation01	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security08	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable

Edit

The Voice over IP (VoIP) network will use the pre-configured SSID profile, so select **VoIP\_SSID**'s radio button and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 16** Tutorial: VoIP SSID Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :		VoIP_SSID			
SSID :		VoIP_SSID_Example			
Hide Name(SSID) :		Enable			
Security :		security02			
RADIUS :		radius01			
QoS :		VoIP			
L2 Isolation :		Disable			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :		Disable			
MAC Filtering :		Disable			
		<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>			

- Choose a new SSID for the VoIP network. In this example, enter **VOIP\_SSID\_Example**. Note that although the SSID changes, the SSID profile name (**VoIP\_SSID**) remains the same as before.
- Select **Enable** from the **Hide Name (SSID)** list box. You want only authorized company employees to use this network, so there is no need to broadcast the SSID to wireless clients scanning the area.
- The standard network (SSID04) is currently using the **security01** profile, so use a different profile for the VoIP network. If you used the **security01** profile, anyone who could access the standard network could access the VoIP wireless network. Select **security02** from the **Security** field.
- Leave all the other fields at their defaults and click **Apply**.

#### 4.2.2.1 Set Up Security for the VoIP Profile

Now you need to configure the security settings to use on the VoIP wireless network. Click the **Security** tab.

**Figure 17** Tutorial: VoIP Security

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
-	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode		
<input type="radio"/>	1	security01	WPA2.PSK		
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	2	security02	None		
<input type="radio"/>	3	security03	None		
<input type="radio"/>	4	security04	None		
<input type="radio"/>	5	security05	None		
<input type="radio"/>	6	security06	None		
<input type="radio"/>	7	security07	None		
<input type="radio"/>	8	security08	None		
<input type="radio"/>	9	security09	None		
<input type="radio"/>	10	security10	None		
<input type="radio"/>	11	security11	None		
<input type="radio"/>	12	security12	None		
<input type="radio"/>	13	security13	None		
<input type="radio"/>	14	security14	None		
<input type="radio"/>	15	security15	None		
<input type="radio"/>	16	security16	None		

You already chose to use the **security02** profile for this network, so select the radio button for **security02** and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

**Figure 18** Tutorial: VoIP Security Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<div><div><div>Name :</div><div>VoIP_Security</div></div><div><div>Security Mode :</div><div>WPA2-PSK</div></div><div><div>Pre-Shared Key :</div><div>ThisismyWPA2-PSKpre-sharedkey</div></div><div><div>ReAuthentication Timer :</div><div>1800</div><div>( in seconds)</div></div><div><div>Idle Timeout :</div><div>3600</div><div>( in seconds)</div></div><div><div>Group Key Update Timer :</div><div>1800</div><div>( in seconds)</div></div></div> <div><div>Apply</div><div>Reset</div></div>					

- Change the **Name** field to “VoIP\_Security” to make it easier to remember and identify.
- In this example, you do not have a RADIUS server for authentication, so select **WPA2-PSK** in the **Security Mode** field. WPA2-PSK provides strong security that anyone with a compatible wireless client can use, once they know the pre-shared key (PSK). Enter the PSK you want to use in your network in the **Pre Shared Key** field. In this example, the PSK is “ThisismyWPA2-PSKpre-sharedkey”.

- Click **Apply**. The **WIRELESS > Security** screen displays. Ensure that the **Profile Name** for entry 2 displays “**VoIP\_Security**” and that the **Security Mode** is **WPA2-PSK**.

**Figure 19** Tutorial: VoIP Security: Updated

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																				
<table><tr><th></th><th>Index</th><th>Profile Name</th><th>Security Mode</th></tr><tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>security01</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>VoIP_Security</td><td>WPA2-PSK</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>security03</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>security04</td><td>None</td></tr></table>							Index	Profile Name	Security Mode		1	security01	None		2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK		3	security03	None		4	security04	None
	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode																						
	1	security01	None																						
	2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK																						
	3	security03	None																						
	4	security04	None																						

#### 4.2.2.2 Activate the VoIP Profile

You need to activate the **VoIP\_SSID** profile before it can be used. Click the **Wireless** tab. In the **Select SSID Profile** table, select the **VoIP\_SSID** profile and click **Apply**.

**Figure 20** Tutorial: Activate VoIP Profile

Select SSID Profile			
Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03

Your VoIP wireless network is now ready to use. Any traffic using the **VoIP\_SSID** profile will be given the highest priority across the wireless network.

#### 4.2.3 Configure the Guest Network

When you are setting up the wireless network for guests to your office, your primary concern is to keep your network secure while allowing access to certain resources (such as a network printer, or the Internet). For this reason, the pre-configured **Guest\_SSID** profile has layer-2 isolation and intra-BSS traffic blocking enabled by default. “Layer-2 isolation” means that a client accessing the network via the **Guest\_SSID** profile can access only certain pre-defined devices on the network (see [Section 9.1 on page 123](#)), and “intra-BSS traffic blocking” means that the client cannot access other clients on the same wireless network (see [Section 6.1.1 on page 83](#)).

Click **WIRELESS > SSID**. Select **Guest\_SSID**’s entry in the list and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

**Figure 21** Tutorial: Guest Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>Profile Name :</b> Guest_SSID <b>SSID :</b> Guest_SSID_Example <b>Hide Name(SSID) :</b> Disable <b>Security :</b> security03 <b>RADIUS :</b> radius01 <b>QoS :</b> NONE <b>L2 Isolation :</b> l2isolation01 <b>Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :</b> Enable <b>MAC Filtering :</b> Disable					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

- Choose a new SSID for the guest network. In this example, enter **Guest\_SSID\_Example**. Note that although the SSID changes, the SSID profile name (**Guest\_SSID**) remains the same as before.
- Select **Disable** from the **Hide Name (SSID)** list box. This makes it easier for guests to configure their own computers' wireless clients to your network's settings.
- The standard network (SSID04) is already using the **security01** profile, and the VoIP network is using the **security02** profile (renamed **VoIP\_Security**) so select the **security03** profile from the **Security** field.
- Leave all the other fields at their defaults and click **Apply**.

#### 4.2.3.1 Set Up Security for the Guest Profile

Now you need to configure the security settings to use on the guest wireless network. Click the **Security** tab.

You already chose to use the **security03** profile for this network, so select **security03**'s entry in the list and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

**Figure 22** Tutorial: Guest Security Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>Name :</b> Guest_Security <b>Security Mode :</b> WPA-PSK <b>Pre-Shared Key :</b> ThisismyGuestWPApre-shared-key <b>ReAuthentication Timer :</b> 1800 (in seconds) <b>Idle Timeout :</b> 3600 (in seconds) <b>Group Key Update Timer :</b> 1800 (in seconds)					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

- Change the **Name** field to "Guest\_Security" to make it easier to remember and identify.

- Figure 23** Tutorial: Guest Security: Updated

#### 4.2.3.2 Set up Layer 2 Isolation

**Figure 24** Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation

The Guest\_SSID network uses the **Isolation01** profile by default, so select its entry and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 25** Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation Profile

**Layer-2 Isolation Configuration**

Profile Name:

Allow devices with these MAC addresses

Index	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address
1	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA	17	00:00:00:00:00:00
2	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00	18	00:00:00:00:00:00
3	00:00:00:00:00:00	19	00:00:00:00:00:00
15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00
16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00

Enter the MAC addresses of the two network devices you want users on the guest network to be able to access: the main network router (00:AA:00:AA:00:AA) and the network printer (AA:00:AA:00:AA:00). Click **Apply**.

#### 4.2.3.3 Activate the Guest Profile

You need to activate the **Guest\_SSID** profile before it can be used. Click the **Wireless** tab. In the **Select SSID Profile** table, select the check box for the **Guest\_SSID** profile and click **Apply**.

**Figure 26** Tutorial: Activate Guest Profile

Output Power:

Select SSID Profile

Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03

Your Guest wireless network is now ready to use.

#### 4.2.4 Testing the Wireless Networks

To make sure that the three networks are correctly configured, do the following.

- On a computer with a wireless client, scan for access points. You should see the **Guest\_SSID** network, but not the **VoIP\_SSID** network. If you can see the VoIP\_SSID network, go to its SSID Edit screen and make sure **Hide Name (SSID)** is set to **Enable**. Whether or not you see the standard network's SSID (**SSID04**) depends on whether "hide SSID" is enabled.



- Try to access each network using the correct security settings, and then using incorrect security settings, such as the WPA-PSK for another active network. If the behavior is different from expected (for example, if you can access the VoIP wireless network using the security settings for the Guest\_SSID wireless network) check that the SSID profile is set to use the correct security profile, and that the settings of the security profile are correct.
- Access the Guest\_SSID network and try to access other resources than those specified in the Layer 2 Isolation (**l2isolation01**) profile screen.

You can use the ping utility to do this. Click **Start > Run...** and enter “cmd” in the **Open:** field. Click **OK**. At the **c:\>** prompt, enter “ping 192.168.1.10” (substitute the IP address of a real device on your network that is not on the layer 2 isolation list). If you receive a reply, check the settings in the **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation > Edit** screen, and ensure that the correct layer 2 isolation profile is enabled in the Guest\_SSID profile screen.

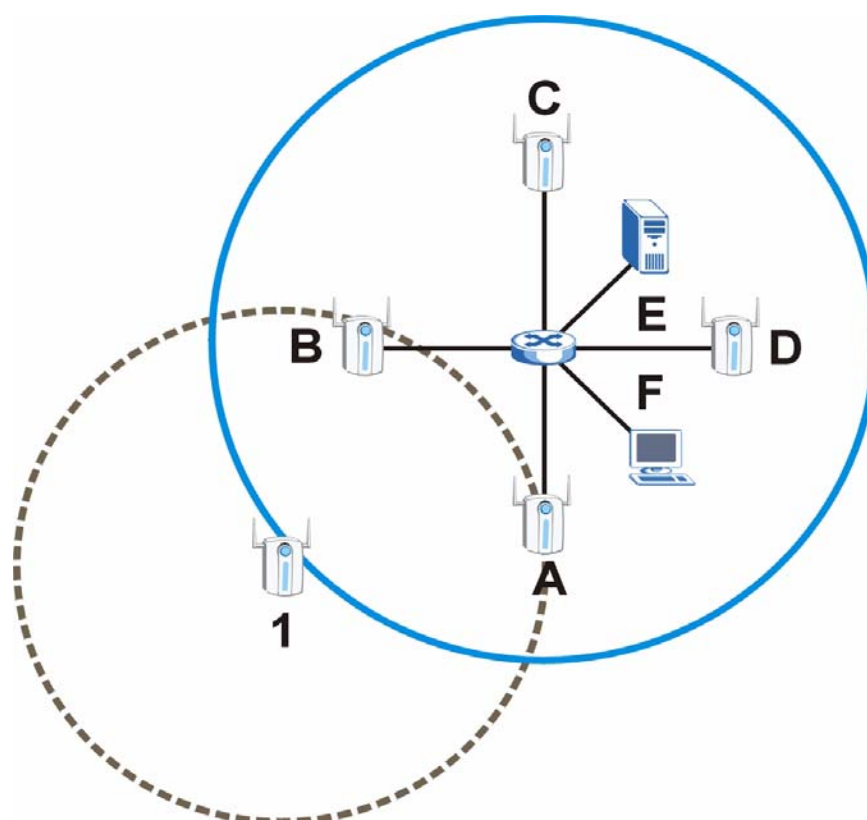
## 4.3 How to Set Up and Use Rogue AP Detection

This example shows you how to configure the rogue AP detection feature on the ZyXEL Device. A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network’s coverage area that is not a sanctioned part of that network. The example also shows how to set the ZyXEL Device to send out e-mail alerts whenever it detects a rogue wireless access point. See [Chapter 11 on page 135](#) for background information on the rogue AP function and security considerations.

In this example, you want to ensure that your company’s data is not accessible to an attacker gaining entry to your wireless network through a rogue AP.

Your wireless network operates in an office building. It consists of four access points (all ZyXEL Devices) and a variable number of wireless clients. You also know that the coffee shop on the ground floor has a wireless network consisting of a single access point, which can be detected and accessed from your floor of the building. There are no other static wireless networks in your coverage area.

The following diagram shows the wireless networks in your area. Your access points are marked **A**, **B**, **C** and **D**. You also have a network mail/file server, marked **E**, and a computer, marked **F**, connected to the wired network. The coffee shop’s access point is marked **1**.

**Figure 27** Tutorial: Wireless Network Example

In the figure, the solid circle represents the range of your wireless network, and the dashed circle represents the extent of the coffee shop's wireless network. Note that the two networks overlap. This means that one or more of your APs can detect the AP (1) in the other wireless network.

When configuring the rogue AP feature on your ZyXEL Devices in this example, you will need to use the information in the following table. You need the IP addresses of your APs to access their Web configurators, and you need the MAC address of each AP to configure the friendly AP list. You need the IP address of the mail server to set up e-mail alerts.

**Table 5** Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information

DEVICE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS
Access Point A	192.168.1.1	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA
Access Point B	192.168.1.2	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00
Access Point C	192.168.1.3	A0:0A:A0:0A:A0:0A
Access Point D	192.168.1.4	0A:A0:0A:A0:0A:A0
File / Mail Server E	192.168.1.25	N/A
Access Point 1	UNKNOWN	AF:AF:AF:FA:FA:FA



The ZyXEL Device can detect the MAC addresses of APs automatically. However, it is more secure to obtain the correct MAC addresses from another source and add them to the friendly AP list manually. For example, an attacker's AP mimicking the correct SSID could be placed on the friendly AP list by accident, if selected from the list of auto-detected APs. In this example you have spoken to the coffee shop's owner, who has told you the correct MAC address of his AP.

In this example, you will do the following things.

- 1 Set up and save a friendly AP list.
- 2 Activate periodic Rogue AP Detection.
- 3 Set up e-mail alerts.
- 4 Configure your other access points.
- 5 Test the setup.

### 4.3.1 Set Up and Save a Friendly AP list

Take the following steps to set up and save a list of access points you want to allow in your network's coverage area.

- 1 On a computer connected to the wired network (F in the previous figure), open your Internet browser and enter the URL of access point A (192.168.1.1). Login to the Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 28** Tutorial: Friendly AP (Before Data Entry)

- 2 Fill in the **MAC Address** and **Description** fields as in the following table. Click **Add** after you enter the details of each AP to include it in the list.

**Table 6** Tutorial: Friendly AP Information

MAC ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
00:AA:00:AA:00:AA	My Access Point _A_
AA:00:AA:00:AA:00	My Access Point _B_
A0:0A:A0:0A:A0:0A	My Access Point _C_
0A:A0:0A:A0:0A:A0	My Access Point _D_
AF:AF:AF:FA:FA:FA	Coffee Shop Access Point _1_



You can add APs that are not part of your network to the friendly AP list, as long as you know that they do not pose a threat to your network's security.

The Friendly AP screen now appears as follows.

**Figure 29** Tutorial: Friendly AP (After Data Entry)

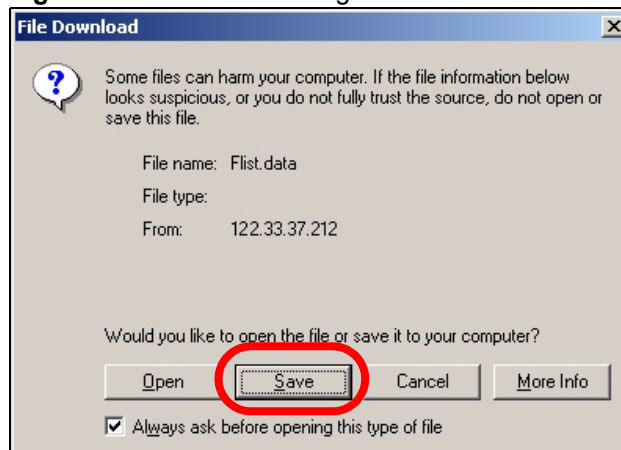
#	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description	
1	00:aa:00:aa:00:aa	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _A_	
2	aa:00:aa:00:aa:00	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _B_	
3	a0:0a:a0:0a:a0:0a	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _C_	
4	0a:a0:0a:a0:0a:a0	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _D_	
5	af:af:af:fa:fa:fa	N/A	N/A	N/A	Coffee Shop Access Point _1_	

- Next, you will save the list of friendly APs in order to provide a backup and upload it to your other access points.

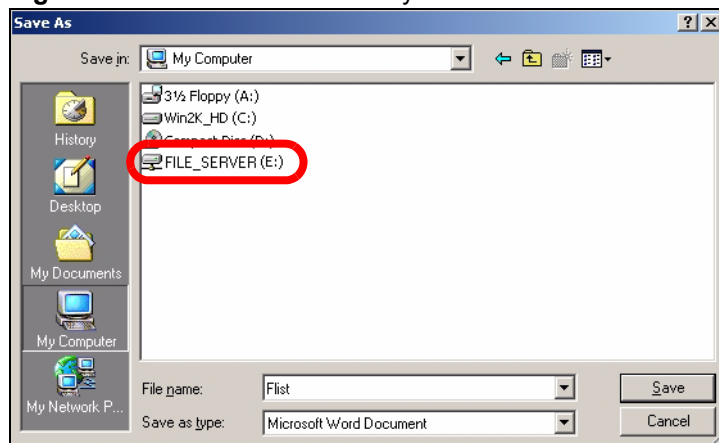
Click the **Configuration** tab. The following screen appears.

**Figure 30** Tutorial: Configuration

- Click **Export**. If a window similar to the following appears, click **Save**.

**Figure 31** Tutorial: Warning

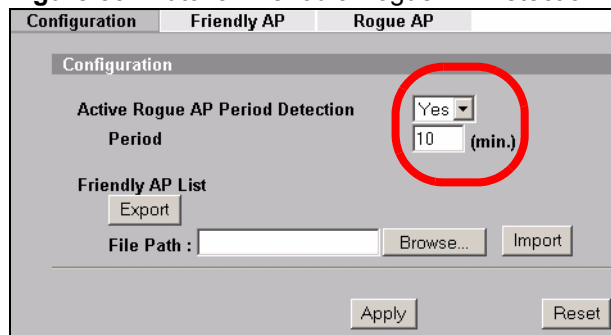
- 5 Save the friendly AP list somewhere it can be accessed by all the other access points on the network. In this example, save it on the network file server (E in Figure 27 on page 62). The default filename is “Flist”.

**Figure 32** Tutorial: Save Friendly AP list

### 4.3.2 Activate Periodic Rogue AP Detection

Take the following steps to activate rogue AP detection on the first of your ZyXEL Devices.

- 1 In the **ROGUE AP > Configuration** screen, select **Yes** from the **Activate Rogue AP Period Detection** field.

**Figure 33** Tutorial: Periodic Rogue AP Detection

- 2 In the **Period (min.)** field, enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to scan for rogue APs. You can have the ZyXEL Device scan anywhere from once every ten minutes to once every hour. In this example, enter “10”.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

### 4.3.3 Set Up E-mail Logs

In this section, you will configure the first of your four APs to send a log message to your e-mail inbox whenever a rogue AP is discovered in your wireless network’s coverage area.

- 1 Click **LOGS > Log Settings**. The following screen appears.

**Figure 34** Tutorial: Log Settings

The screenshot shows the 'Log Settings' web page. It has tabs for 'View Log' and 'Log Settings'. The 'Address Info' section includes fields for 'Mail Server' (192.168.1.25), 'Mail Subject' (ALERT\_Access\_Point\_A), 'Send log to', and 'Send alerts to' (myname@myfirm.com). Below this is a checkbox for 'SMTP Authentication' and fields for 'User NAME' and 'Password'. The 'Syslog Logging' section has a checkbox for 'Active', a 'Syslog IP Address' field (0.0.0.0), and a 'Log Facility' dropdown (Local 1). The 'Send Log' section has a 'Log Schedule' dropdown (None), a 'Day for Sending Log' dropdown (Sunday), a 'Time for Sending Log' field (0 hour, 0 minute), and a checkbox for 'Clear log after sending mail'. Below these are two columns of checkboxes for 'Log' categories: System Maintenance, System Errors, PKI, SSL/TLS, 802.1x, Wireless, Internal RADIUS Server, and Rogue AP Detection. A red box highlights the 'Send immediate alert' section, which includes checkboxes for System Errors, PKI, and Rogue AP Detection. At the bottom are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

- In this example, your mail server’s IP address is **192.168.1.25**. Enter this IP address in the **Mail Server** field.
- Enter a subject line for the alert e-mails in the **Mail Subject** field. Choose a subject that is eye-catching and identifies the access point - in this example, “ALERT\_Access\_Point\_A”.
- Enter the email address to which you want alerts to be sent (**myname@myfirm.com**, in this example).

- In the **Send Immediate Alert** section, select the events you want to trigger immediate e-mails. Ensure that **Rogue AP** is selected.
- Click **Apply**.

### 4.3.4 Configure Your Other Access Points

Access point **A** is now configured to do the following.

- Scan for access points in its coverage area every ten minutes.
- Recognize friendly access points from a list.
- Send immediate alerts to your email account if it detects an access point not on the list.

Now you need to configure the other wireless access points on your network to do the same things.

For each access point, take the following steps.

- 1 From a computer on the wired network, enter the access point's IP address and login to its Web configurator. See [Table 5 on page 62](#) for the example IP addresses.
- 2 Import the friendly AP list. Click **ROGUE AP > Configuration > Browse...** Find the "Flist" file where you previously saved it on the network and click **Open**.
- 3 Click **Import**. Check the **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP** screen to ensure that the friendly AP list has been correctly uploaded.
- 4 Activate periodic rogue AP detection. See [Section 4.3.2 on page 65](#).
- 5 Set up e-mail logs as in [Section 4.3.3 on page 66](#), but change the **Mail Subject** field so you can tell which AP the alerts come from ("ALERT\_Access\_Point\_B", etc.)

### 4.3.5 Test the Setup

Next, test your setup to ensure it is correctly configured.

- Log into each AP's Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP**. Click **Refresh**. If any of the MAC addresses from [Table 6 on page 63](#) appear in the list, the friendly AP function may be incorrectly configured - check the **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP** screen. If any entries appear in the rogue AP list that are not in [Table 6 on page 63](#), write down the AP's MAC address for future reference and check your e-mail inbox. If you have received a rogue AP alert, email alerts are correctly configured on that ZyXEL Device.
- If you have another access point that is not used in your network, make a note of its MAC address and set it up next to each of your ZyXEL Devices in turn while the network is running.

Either wait for at least ten minutes (to ensure the ZyXEL Device performs a scan in that time) or login to the ZyXEL Device's Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP > Refresh** to have the ZyXEL Device perform a scan immediately.

- Check the **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP** screen. You should see an entry in the list with the same MAC address as your "rogue" AP.
- Check the **LOGS > View Logs** screen. You should see a **Rogue AP Detection** entry in red text, including the MAC address of your "rogue" AP.
- Check your e-mail. You should have received at least one e-mail alert (your other ZyXEL Devices may also have sent alerts, depending on their proximity and the output power of your "rogue" AP).

## 4.4 Using Multiple MAC Filters and L-2 Isolation Profiles

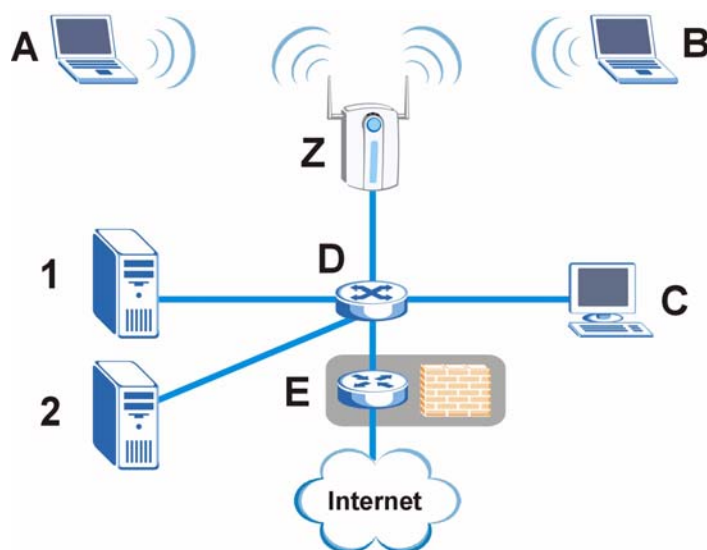
This example shows you how to allow certain users to access only specific parts of your network. You can do this by using multiple MAC filters and layer-2 isolation profiles.

### 4.4.1 Scenario

In this example, you run a company network in which certain employees must wirelessly access secure file servers containing valuable proprietary data.

You have two secure servers (**1** and **2** in the following figure). Wireless user “Alice” (**A**) needs to access server **1** (but should not access server **2**) and wireless user “Bob” (**B**) needs to access server **2** (but should not access server **1**). Your ZyXEL Device is marked **Z**. **C** is a workstation on your wired network, **D** is your main network switch, and **E** is the security gateway you use to connect to the Internet.

**Figure 35** Tutorial: Example Network



### 4.4.2 Your Requirements

- 1 You want to set up a wireless network to allow only Alice to access Server 1 and the Internet.
- 2 You want to set up a second wireless network to allow only Bob to access Server 2 and the Internet.

### 4.4.3 Setup

In this example, you have already set up the ZyXEL Device in MBSSID mode (see [Chapter 8 on page 115](#)). It uses two SSID profiles simultaneously. You have configured each SSID profile as shown in the following table.

**Table 7** Tutorial: SSID Profile Security Settings

SSID Profile Name	SERVER_1	SERVER_2
SSID	SSID_S1	SSID_S2



**Table 7** Tutorial: SSID Profile Security Settings

Security	Security Profile <b>security03</b> : WPA2-PSK Hide SSID	Security Profile <b>security04</b> : WPA2-PSK Hide SSID
Intra-BSS traffic blocking	Enabled	Enabled

Each SSID profile already uses a different pre-shared key.

In this example, you will configure access limitations for each SSID profile. To do this, you will take the following steps.

- 1 Configure the SERVER\_1 network's SSID profile to use specific MAC filter and layer-2 isolation profiles.
- 2 Configure the SERVER\_1 network's MAC filter profile.
- 3 Configure the SERVER\_1 network's layer-2 isolation profile.
- 4 Repeat steps 1 ~ 3 for the SERVER\_2 network.
- 5 Check your settings and test the configuration.

To configure layer-2 isolation, you need to know the MAC addresses of the devices on your network, which are as follows.

**Table 8** Tutorial: Example Network MAC Addresses

DEVICE	LABEL	MAC ADDRESS
ZyXEL Device	Z	BB:AA:99:88:77:66
Secure Server 1	1	AA:99:88:77:66:55
Secure Server 2	2	99:88:77:66:55:44
Workstation	C	88:77:66:55:44:33
Switch	D	77:66:55:44:33:22
Security gateway	E	66:55:44:33:22:11

To configure MAC filtering, you need to know the MAC addresses of the devices Alice and Bob use to connect to the network, which are as follows.

**Table 9** Tutorial: Example User MAC Addresses

USER	MAC ADDRESS
Alice	11:22:33:44:55:66
Bob	22:33:44:55:66:77

#### 4.4.4 Configure the SERVER\_1 Network

First, you will set up the SERVER\_1 network which allows Alice to access secure server 1 via the network switch.

You will configure the MAC filter to restrict access to Alice alone, and then configure layer-2 isolation to allow her to access only the network router, the file server and the Internet security gateway.

Take the following steps to configure the SERVER\_1 network.

- 1 Log into the ZyXEL Device's Web Configurator and click **WIRELESS > SSID**. The following screen displays, showing the SSID profiles you already configured.

**Figure 36** Tutorial: SSID Profile

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter		
SERVER_1							
Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	I2isolation01	Disable
3	SERVER_1	SSID03	security03	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
4	SERVER_2	SSID04	security04	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security03	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable

- 2 Select **SERVER\_1**'s entry and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 37** Tutorial: SSID Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name : <input type="text" value="SERVER_1"/> SSID : <input type="text" value="SSID03"/> Hide Name(SSID) : <input type="text" value="Enable"/> Security : <input type="text" value="security03"/> RADIUS : <input type="text" value="radius01"/> QoS : <input type="text" value="NONE"/> L2 Isolation : <input type="text" value="I2isolation03"/> Intra-BSS Traffic blocking : <input type="text" value="Enable"/> MAC Filtering : <input type="text" value="macfilter03"/> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </div>					

Select **I2Isolation03** in the **L2 Isolation** field, and select **macfilter03** in the **MAC Filtering** field. Click **Apply**.

- 3 Click the **Layer-2 Isolation** tab. When the **Layer-2 Isolation** screen appears, select **L2Isolation03**'s entry and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 38** Tutorial: Layer-2 Isolation Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>Layer-2 Isolation Configuration</b>					
<b>Profile Name</b>		L-2-ISO_SERVER_1			
<b>Allow devices with these MAC addresses</b>					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	77:66:55:44:33:22	NET_ROUTER	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	AA:99:88:77:66:55	SERVER_1	18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	66:55:44:33:22:11	GATEWAY	19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	

Enter the network router's **MAC Address** and add a **Description** ("NET\_ROUTER" in this case) in **Set 1**'s entry.

Enter server 1's **MAC Address** and add a **Description** ("SERVER\_1" in this case) in **Set 2**'s entry.

Change the **Profile Name** to "L-2-ISO\_SERVER\_1" and click **Apply**. You have restricted users on the SERVER\_1 network to access only the devices with the MAC addresses you entered.

- Click the **MAC Filter** tab. When the **MAC Filter** screen appears, select **macfilter03**'s entry and click **Edit**.

Enter the MAC address of the device Alice uses to connect to the network in **Set 1**'s **MAC Address** field and enter her name in the **Description** field, as shown in the following figure. Change the **Profile Name** to "MacFilter\_SERVER\_1". Select **Allow Association** from the **Filter Action** field and click **Apply**.

**Figure 39** Tutorial: MAC Filter Edit (SERVER\_1)

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>MAC Address Filter</b>					
<b>Profile Name</b>		MacFilter_SERVER_1			
<b>Filter Action</b>		Allow Association			
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	11:22:33:44:55:66	Alice	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	

You have restricted access to the SERVER\_1 network to only the networking device whose MAC address you entered. The SERVER\_1 network is now configured.

### 4.4.5 Configure the SERVER\_2 Network

Next, you will configure the SERVER\_2 network that allows Bob to access secure server 2 and the Internet.

To do this, repeat the procedure in [Section 4.4.4 on page 69](#), substituting the following information.

**Table 10** Tutorial: SERVER\_2 Network Information

<b>SSID Screen</b>	
Index	4
Profile Name	SERVER_2
<b>SSID Edit (SERVER_2) Screen</b>	
L2 Isolation	L2Isolation04
MAC Filtering	macfilter04
<b>Layer-2 Isolation (L2Isolation04) Screen</b>	
Profile Name	L-2-ISO_SERVER-2
Set 1	MAC Address: 77:66:55:44:33:22 Description: NET_ROUTER
Set 2	MAC Address: 99:88:77:66:55:44 Description: SERVER_2
Set 3	MAC Address: 66:55:44:33:22:11 Description: GATEWAY
<b>MAC Filter (macfilter04) Edit Screen</b>	
Profile Name	MacFilter_SERVER_2
Set 1	MAC Address: 22:33:44:55:66:77 Description: Bob

### 4.4.6 Checking your Settings and Testing the Configuration

Use the following sections to ensure that your wireless networks are set up correctly.

#### 4.4.6.1 Checking Settings

Take the following steps to check that the ZyXEL Device is using the correct SSIDs, MAC filters and layer-2 isolation profiles.

- 1 Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. Check that the **Operating Mode** is **MBSSID** and that the correct SSID profiles are selected and activated, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 40** Tutorial: SSID Profiles Activated

Output Power








Select SSID Profile

Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1
4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_2	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1

☒ Enable

- 2 Next, click the **SSID** tab. Check that each configured SSID profile uses the correct **Security**, **Layer-2 Isolation** and **MAC Filter** profiles, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 41** Tutorial: SSID Tab Correct Settings

Wireless		SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter		
	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	L2isolation01	Disable
	3	SERVER_1	SSID_S1	security03	radius01	NONE	L2-ISO_SERVER_1	MacFilter_SERVER_1
	4	SERVER_2	SSID_S2	security04	radius01	NONE	L2-ISO_SERVER_2	MacFilter_SERVER_2
	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable



If the settings are not as shown, follow the steps in the relevant section of this tutorial again.

#### 4.4.6.2 Testing the Configuration

Before you allow employees to use the network, you need to thoroughly test whether the setup behaves as it should. Take the following steps to do this.

- Test the SERVER\_1 network.
  - Using Alice's computer and wireless client, and the correct security settings, do the following.
    - Attempt to access Server 1. You should be able to do so.
    - Attempt to access the Internet. You should be able to do so.
    - Attempt to access Server 2. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, layer-2 isolation is misconfigured.
  - Using Alice's computer and wireless client, and incorrect security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER\_1 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, security is misconfigured.

- Using another computer and wireless client, but with the correct security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER\_1 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, MAC filtering is misconfigured.

**2** Test the SERVER\_2 network.

- Using Bob's computer and wireless client, and the correct security settings, do the following.  
Attempt to access Server 2. You should be able to do so.  
Attempt to access the Internet. You should be able to do so.  
Attempt to access Server 1. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, layer-2 isolation is misconfigured.
- Using Bob's computer and wireless client, and incorrect security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER\_2 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, security is misconfigured.
- Using another computer and wireless client, but with the correct security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER\_2 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, MAC filtering is misconfigured.

If you cannot do something that you should be able to do, check the settings as described in [Section 4.4.6.1 on page 73](#), and in the individual Security, layer-2 isolation and MAC filter profiles for the relevant network. If this does not help, see the Troubleshooting chapter in this User's Guide.

---

# PART II

## The Web Configurator

---

System Screens (77)  
Wireless Configuration (83)  
Wireless Security Configuration (99)  
MBSSID and SSID (115)  
Other Wireless Configuration (123)  
IP Screen (133)  
Rogue AP (135)  
Remote Management Screens (141)  
Internal RADIUS Server (151)  
Certificates (157)  
Log Screens (175)  
VLAN (181)  
Maintenance (199)





# System Screens

## 5.1 System Overview

This section provides information on general system setup.

## 5.2 Configuring General Setup

Click **SYSTEM > General**.

**Figure 42** System > General

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 11** System > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setup	
System Name	Type a descriptive name to identify the ZyXEL Device in the Ethernet network. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.
Domain Name	This is not a required field. Leave this field blank or enter the domain name here if you know it.
Administrator Inactivity Timer	Type how many minutes a management session (either via the web configurator or SMT) can be left idle before the session times out. The default is 5 minutes. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. A value of "0" means a management session never times out, no matter how long it has been left idle (not recommended).
System DNS Servers	

**Table 11** System > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Select <b>From DHCP</b> if your DHCP server dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the ZyXEL Device's Ethernet IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the DHCP assigns. Select <b>User-Defined</b> if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose <b>User-Defined</b> , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, <b>User-Defined</b> changes to <b>None</b> after you click <b>Apply</b> . If you set a second choice to <b>User-Defined</b> , and enter the same IP address, the second <b>User-Defined</b> changes to <b>None</b> after you click <b>Apply</b> . Select <b>None</b> if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a machine in order to access it. The default setting is <b>None</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

## 5.3 Administrator Authentication on RADIUS

The administrator authentication on RADIUS feature lets a (external or internal) RADIUS server authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device. This is useful if you need to regularly change a password that you use to manage several ZyXEL Devices.

Activate administrator authentication on RADIUS in the **SYSTEM > Password** screen and configure the same user name, password and RADIUS server information on each ZyXEL Device. Then, whenever you want to change the password, just change it on the RADIUS server.

### 5.3.1 Configuring Password

It is strongly recommended that you change your ZyXEL Device's password. Click **SYSTEM > Password**. The screen appears as shown.

If you forget your ZyXEL Device's password (or IP address), you will need to reset the device. See the section on resetting the ZyXEL Device for details



**Regardless of how you configure this screen, you still use the local system password to log in via the console port (not available on all models).**

**Figure 43** SYSTEM > Password.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 12** Password

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Enable Admin at Local	Select this check box to have the device authenticate management logins to the device.
Use old setting	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device use the local management password already configured on the device ("1234" is the default).
Use new setting	Select this if you want to change the local management password.
Old Password	Type in your existing system password ("1234" is the default password).
New Password	Type your new system password (up to 31 characters). Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Retype to Confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation.
Enable Admin on RADIUS	Select this (and configure the other fields in this section) to have a RADIUS server authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device.
Use old setting	Select this to have a RADIUS server authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device using the RADIUS username and password already configured on the device.
Use new setting	Select this if you want to change the RADIUS username and password the ZyXEL Device uses to authenticate management logon.
User Name	Enter the username for this user account. This name can be up to 31 ASCII characters long, including spaces.
Password	Type a password (up to 31 ASCII characters) for this user profile. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays a (*) for each character you type. Spaces are allowed.  <b>Note: If you are using PEAP authentication, this password field is limited to 14 ASCII characters in length.</b>

**Table 12** Password

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
RADIUS	<p>Select the RADIUS server profile of the RADIUS server that is to authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>The ZyXEL Device tests the user name and password against the RADIUS server when you apply your settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The user name and password must already be configured in the RADIUS server.</li> <li>You must already have a RADIUS profile configured for the RADIUS server (see <a href="#">Section 7.11 on page 112</a>).</li> <li>The server must be set to <b>Active</b> in the profile.</li> </ul>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

## 5.4 Configuring Time Setting

To change your ZyXEL Device's time and date, click **SYSTEM > Time Setting**. The screen appears as shown. Use this screen to configure the ZyXEL Device's time based on your local time zone.

**Figure 44** SYSTEM > Time Setting

The screenshot shows the 'SYSTEM > Time Setting' configuration page. It includes tabs for 'General', 'Password', and 'Time Setting'. The 'Time Setting' tab is active. The page is organized into sections: 'Current Time and Date' (displaying 00:33:4 and 2000-01-01), 'Time and Date Setup' (with 'Manual' selected for time setting), and 'Time Zone Setup' (with '(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London' selected). At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 13** SYSTEM > Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Time	This field displays the time of your ZyXEL Device. Each time you reload this page, the ZyXEL Device synchronizes the time with the time server (if configured).
Current Date	This field displays the last updated date from the time server.
Manual	Select this radio button to enter the time and date manually. If you configure a new time and date, time zone and daylight saving at the same time, the time zone and daylight saving will affect the new time and date you entered.
New Time (hh:mm:ss)	This field displays the last updated time from the time server or the last time configured manually. When you set <b>Time and Date Setup</b> to <b>Manual</b> , enter the new time in this field and then click <b>Apply</b> .
New Date (yyyy:mm:dd)	This field displays the last updated date from the time server or the last date configured manually. When you set <b>Time and Date Setup</b> to <b>Manual</b> , enter the new date in this field and then click <b>Apply</b> .
Get from Time Server	Select this radio button to have the ZyXEL Device get the time and date from the time server you specify below.
Auto	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device use the predefined list of time servers.
User Defined Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or URL of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Time Zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Savings	Select this option if you use daylight savings time. Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Daylight Saving</b> field. The <b>hr</b> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select <b>Second, Sunday, March</b> and <b>2:00</b> . Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select <b>Mar., Last, Sun</b> . The time you type in the <b>hr</b> field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Daylight Saving</b> field. The <b>hr</b> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select <b>First, Sunday, November</b> and <b>2:00</b> . Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select <b>Oct., Last, Sun</b> . The time you type in the <b>hr</b> field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).

**Table 13** SYSTEM > Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

## 5.5 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List

When you turn on the ZyXEL Device for the first time, the date and time start at 2000-01-01 00:00:00. When you select **Auto** in the **SYSTEM > Time Setting** screen, the ZyXEL Device then attempts to synchronize with one of the following pre-defined list of NTP time servers.

The ZyXEL Device continues to use the following pre-defined list of NTP time servers if you do not specify a time server or it cannot synchronize with the time server you specified.

**Table 14** Default Time Servers

ntp1.cs.wisc.edu
ntp1.gbg.netnod.se
ntp2.cs.wisc.edu
tock.usno.navy.mil
ntp3.cs.wisc.edu
ntp.cs.strath.ac.uk
ntp1.sp.se
time1.stupi.se
tick.stdtime.gov.tw
tock.stdtime.gov.tw
time.stdtime.gov.tw

When the ZyXEL Device uses the pre-defined list of NTP time servers, it randomly selects one server and tries to synchronize with it. If the synchronization fails, then the ZyXEL Device goes through the rest of the list in order from the first one tried until either it is successful or all the pre-defined NTP time servers have been tried.

# Wireless Configuration

This chapter discusses how to configure the Wireless screens on the ZyXEL Device.

## 6.1 Wireless LAN Overview

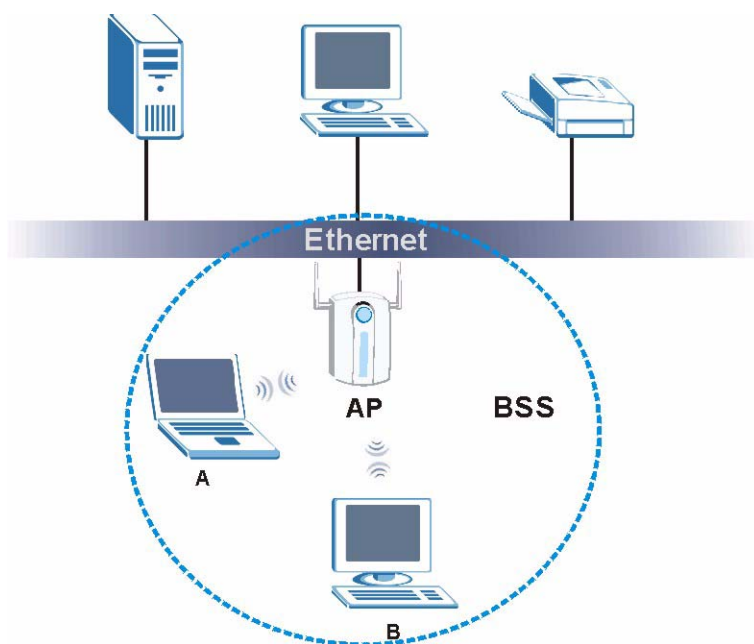
This section introduces the wireless LAN (WLAN) and some basic scenarios.

### 6.1.1 BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless stations or between a wireless station and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless stations in the BSS. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is disabled, wireless station A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is enabled, wireless station A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

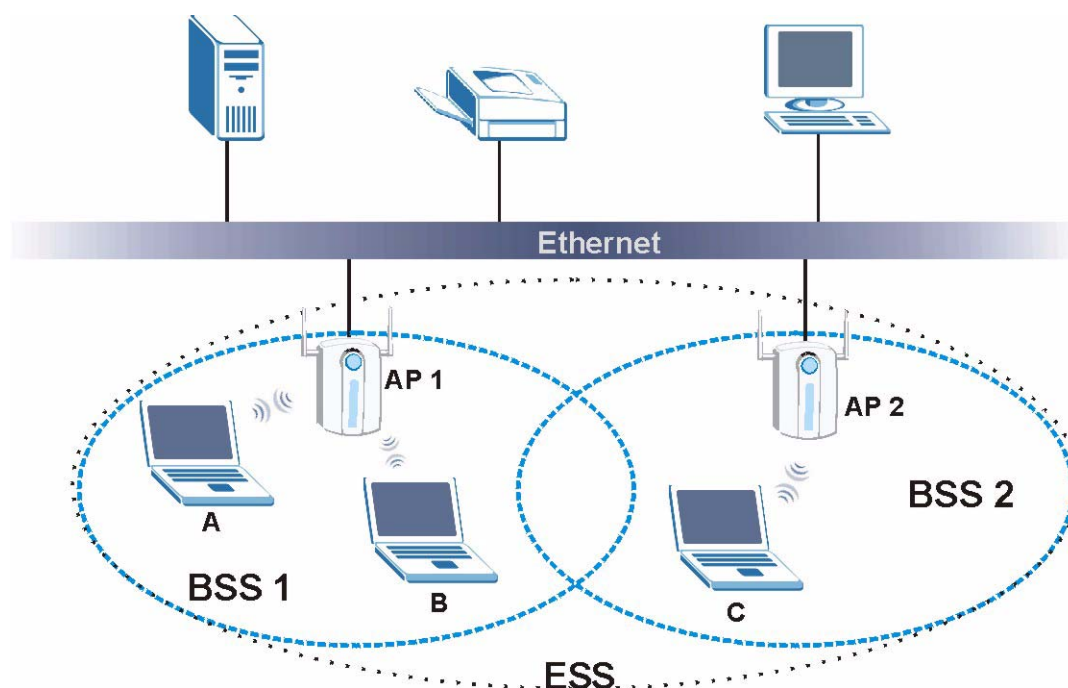
**Figure 45** Basic Service set



### 6.1.2 ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS). An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless stations within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

**Figure 46** Extended Service Set



## 6.2 Wireless LAN Basics

See the Wireless LANs Appendix for information on the following:

- Wireless LAN Topologies
- Channel
- RTS/CTS
- Fragmentation Threshold
- IEEE 802.1x
- RADIUS
- Types of Authentication
- WPA
- Security Parameters Summary



## 6.3 Quality of Service

This section discusses the Quality of Service (QoS) features available on the ZyXEL Device.

### 6.3.1 WMM QoS

WMM (Wi-Fi MultiMedia) QoS (Quality of Service) ensures quality of service in wireless networks. It controls WLAN transmission priority on packets to be transmitted over the wireless network.

WMM QoS prioritizes wireless traffic according to the delivery requirements of the individual and applications. WMM QoS is a part of the IEEE 802.11e QoS enhancement to certified Wi-Fi wireless networks.

On APs without WMM QoS, all traffic streams are given the same access priority to the wireless network. If the introduction of another traffic stream creates a data transmission demand that exceeds the current network capacity, then the new traffic stream reduces the throughput of the other traffic streams.

The ZyXEL Device uses WMM QoS to prioritize traffic streams according to the IEEE 802.1q or DSCP information in each packet's header. The ZyXEL Device automatically determines the priority to use for an individual traffic stream. This prevents reductions in data transmission for applications that are sensitive to latency and jitter (variations in delay).

#### 6.3.1.1 WMM QoS Priorities

The following table describes the WMM QoS priority levels that the ZyXEL Device uses.

**Table 15** WMM QoS Priorities

PRIORITY LEVEL	DESCRIPTION
voice (WMM_VOICE)	Typically used for traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter. Use this priority to reduce latency for improved voice quality.
video (WMM_VIDEO)	Typically used for traffic which has some tolerance for jitter but needs to be prioritized over other data traffic.
best effort (WMM_BEST_EFFORT)	Typically used for traffic from applications or devices that lack QoS capabilities. Use best effort priority for traffic that is less sensitive to latency, but is affected by long delays, such as Internet surfing.
background (WMM_BACKGROUND)	This is typically used for non-critical traffic such as bulk transfers and print jobs that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users. Use background priority for applications that do not have strict latency and throughput requirements.

### 6.3.2 ATC

Automatic Traffic Classifier (ATC) is a bandwidth management tool that prioritizes data packets sent across the network. ATC assigns each packet a priority and then queues the packet accordingly. Packets assigned a high priority are processed more quickly than those with low priority if there is congestion, allowing time-sensitive applications to flow more smoothly. Time-sensitive applications include both those that require a low level of latency and a low level of jitter such as Voice over IP or Internet gaming, and those for which jitter alone is a problem such as Internet radio or streaming video.

ATC assigns priority based on packet size, since time-sensitive applications such as Internet telephony (Voice over IP or VoIP) tend to have smaller packet sizes than non-time sensitive applications such as FTP (File Transfer Protocol). The following table shows some common applications, their time sensitivity, and their typical data packet sizes. Note that the figures given are merely examples - sizes may differ according to application and circumstances.

**Table 16** Typical Packet Sizes

APPLICATION	TIME SENSITIVITY	TYPICAL PACKET SIZE (BYTES)
Voice over IP (SIP)	High	< 250
Online Gaming	High	60 ~ 90
Web browsing (http)	Medium	300 ~ 600
FTP	Low	1500

When ATC is activated, the device sends traffic with smaller packets before traffic with larger packets if the network is congested.

ATC assigns priority to packets as shown in the following table.

**Table 17** Automatic Traffic Classifier Priorities

PACKET SIZE (BYTES)	ATC PRIORITY
1 ~ 250	ATC_High
250 ~ 1100	ATC_Medium
1100 +	ATC_Low

You should activate ATC on the ZyXEL Device if your wireless network includes networking devices that do not support WMM QoS, or if you want to prioritize traffic but do not want to configure WMM QoS settings.

### 6.3.3 ATC+WMM

The ZyXEL Device can use a mapping mechanism to use both ATC and WMM QoS. The ATC+WMM function prioritizes all packets transmitted onto the wireless network using WMM QoS, and prioritizes all packets transmitted onto the wired network using ATC. See [Section 8.2.2 on page 119](#) for details of how to configure ATC+WMM.

Use the ATC+WMM function if you want to do the following:

- enable WMM QoS on your wireless network and automatically assign a WMM priority to packets that do not already have one (see [Section 6.3.3.1 on page 86](#)).
- automatically prioritize all packets going from your wireless network to the wired network (see [Section 6.3.3.2 on page 87](#)).

#### 6.3.3.1 ATC+WMM from LAN to WLAN

ATC+WMM from LAN (the wired Local Area Network) to WLAN (the Wireless Local Area Network) allows WMM prioritization of packets that do not already have WMM QoS priorities assigned. The ZyXEL Device automatically classifies data packets using ATC and then assigns WMM priorities based on that ATC classification.

The following table shows how priorities are assigned for packets coming from the LAN to the WLAN.

**Table 18** ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (LAN to WLAN)

PACKET SIZE (BYTES)	→	ATC VALUE	→	WMM VALUE
1 ~ 250		ATC_High		WMM_VIDEO
250 ~ 1100		ATC_Medium		WMM_BEST_EFFORT
1100 +		ATC_Low		WMM_BACKGROUND

### 6.3.3.2 ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN

ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN automatically prioritizes (assigns an ATC value to) all packets coming from the WLAN. Packets are assigned an ATC value based on their WMM value, not their size.

The following table shows how priorities are assigned for packets coming from the WLAN to the LAN when using ATC+WMM.

**Table 19** ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (WLAN to LAN)

WMM VALUE	→	ATC VALUE
WMM_VOICE		ATC_High
WMM_VIDEO		ATC_High
WMM_BEST_EFFORT		ATC_Medium
WMM_BACKGROUND		ATC_Low
NONE		ATC_Medium

## 6.3.4 Type Of Service (ToS)

Network traffic can be classified by setting the ToS (Type Of Service) values at the data source (for example, at the ZyXEL Device) so a server can decide the best method of delivery, that is the least cost, fastest route and so on.

### 6.3.4.1 DiffServ

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

### 6.3.4.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

**Figure 47** DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field

DSCP (6-bit)	Unused (2-bit)
-----------------	-------------------

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

### 6.3.5 ToS (Type of Service) and WMM QoS

The DSCP value of outgoing packets is between 0 and 255. 0 is the default priority. WMM QoS checks the DSCP value in the header of data packets. It gives the traffic a priority according to this number.

In order to control which priority level is given to traffic, the device sending the traffic must set the DSCP value in the header. If the DSCP value is not specified, then the traffic is treated as best-effort. This means the wireless clients and the devices with which they are communicating must both set the DSCP value in order to make the best use of WMM QoS. A Voice over IP (VoIP) device for example may allow you to define the DSCP value.

The following table lists which WMM QoS priority level the ZyXEL Device uses for specific DSCP values.

**Table 20** ToS and IEEE 802.1d to WMM QoS Priority Level Mapping

DSCP VALUE	WMM QOS PRIORITY LEVEL
224, 192	voice
160, 128	video
96, 0 <sup>A</sup>	besteffort
64, 32	background

A. The ZyXEL Device also uses best effort for any DSCP value for which another WMM QoS priority is not specified (255, 158 or 37 for example).

## 6.4 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other STP-compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network.

### 6.4.1 Rapid STP

The ZyXEL Device uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allow faster convergence of the spanning tree (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). Using RSTP topology change information does not have to propagate to the root bridge and unwanted learned addresses are flushed from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

## 6.4.2 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree; it is the bridge with the lowest identifier value (MAC address).

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see the following table.

**Table 21** STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this bridge has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

## 6.4.3 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware bridges exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

### 6.4.4 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states (see next table) to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

**Table 22** STP Port States

PORT STATES	DESCRIPTIONS
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

## 6.5 DFS

When you choose **802.11a** in **Access Point** mode (NWA-3160 only), the ZyXEL Device uses DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) to give you a wider choice of wireless channels.

DFS allows you to use channels in the frequency range normally reserved for radar systems. Radar uses radio signals to detect the location of objects for military, meteorological or air traffic control purposes. As long as your ZyXEL Device detects no radar activity on the channel you select, you can use the channel to communicate. However, a wireless LAN operating on the same frequency as an active radar system could disrupt the radar system. Therefore, if the ZyXEL Device detects radar activity on the channel you select, it automatically instructs the wireless clients to move to another channel, then resumes communications on the new channel.

## 6.6 Wireless Screen Overview

The following is a list of the wireless screens you can configure on the ZyXEL Device.

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
----------	------	----------	--------	-------------------	------------

- 1 Configure the ZyXEL Device to operate in AP, Bridge/Repeater, AP+Bridge or MBSSID mode in the **Wireless** screen. You can also select an **SSID Profile** in the **Wireless** screen.
- 2 Use the **SSID** screens to view and edit SSID profiles.
- 3 Use the **Security** screen to configure wireless profiles.
- 4 Use the **RADIUS** screen to configure RADIUS authentication and accounting settings.
- 5 Use the **Layer-2 Isolation** screen to prevent wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.
- 6 Use the **MAC Filter** screen to allow or restrict access to your wireless network based on a client's MAC address.

## 6.7 Configuring Wireless Settings

Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The screen varies depending upon the operating mode you select.

### 6.7.1 Access Point Mode

Select **Access Point** as the **Operating Mode** to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 48** Wireless: Access Point

The screenshot shows the 'Wireless: Access Point' configuration window. It features several tabs: 'Wireless', 'SSID', 'Security', 'RADIUS', 'Layer-2 Isolation', and 'MAC Filter'. The 'Wireless' tab is selected. The configuration options are as follows:

- Operating Mode:** A dropdown menu set to 'Access Point'.
- 802.11 Mode:** A dropdown menu set to '802.11b+g'.
- Super Mode:** A checkbox that is checked.
- Choose Channel ID:** A dropdown menu set to 'Channel-06 2437MHz' and a 'Scan' button.
- RTS/CTS Threshold:** A text input field set to '2346' with a note '(256 ~ 2346)'.
- Fragmentation Threshold:** A text input field set to '2346' with a note '(256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)'.
- Output Power:** A dropdown menu set to '100%'.
- SSID Profile:** A dropdown menu set to 'Guest2'.
- Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP):** A checked checkbox.
- Enable Roaming:** An unchecked checkbox.

At the bottom of the window are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

**Table 23** Wireless: Access Point

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select <b>Access Point</b> from the drop-down list.
802.11 Mode	Select <b>802.11b Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select <b>802.11g Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select <b>802.11b+g</b> to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced. Select <b>802.11a</b> (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click <b>MAINTENANCE</b> and then the <b>Channel Usage</b> tab to open the <b>Channel Usage</b> screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click <b>Scan</b> instead.
Scan	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device automatically scan for and select the channel with the least interference.

**Table 23** Wireless: Access Point

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to its smallest value (256) turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between <b>256</b> and <b>2346</b> .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following <b>100%(Full Power)</b> , <b>50%</b> , <b>25%</b> , <b>12.5%</b> or <b>Minimum</b> . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
SSID Profile	<p>The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Select an <b>SSID Profile</b> from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>Configure SSID profiles in the <b>SSID</b> screen (see <a href="#">Section 8.2 on page 118</a> for information on configuring SSID).</p> <p><b>Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.</b></p>
Enable Spanning Tree Control (STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP - compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network. Select this to activate STP on the ZyXEL Device.
Enable Roaming	<p>Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet.</p> <p><b>Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.</b></p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

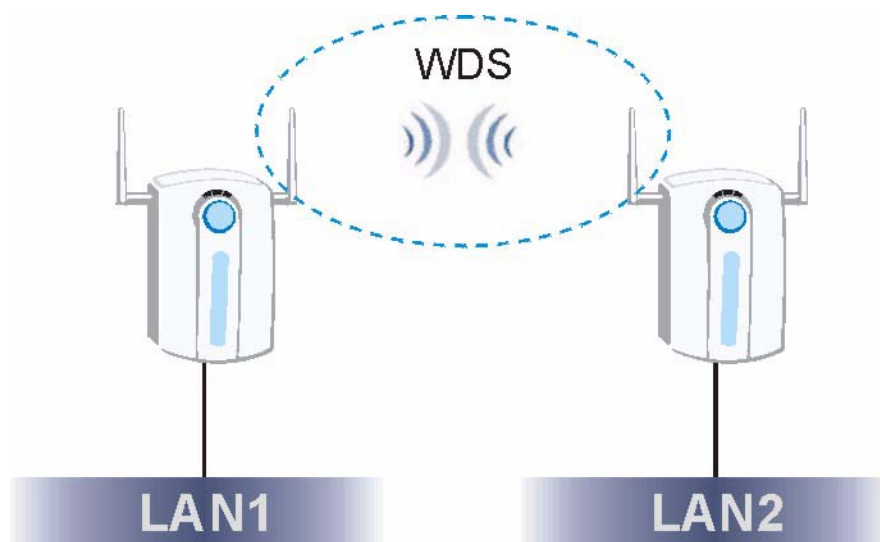
### 6.7.2 Bridge/Repeater Mode

The ZyXEL Device can act as a wireless network bridge and establish wireless links with other APs. You need to know the MAC address of the peer device, which also must be in bridge mode.

The ZyXEL Device can establish up to five wireless links with other APs.

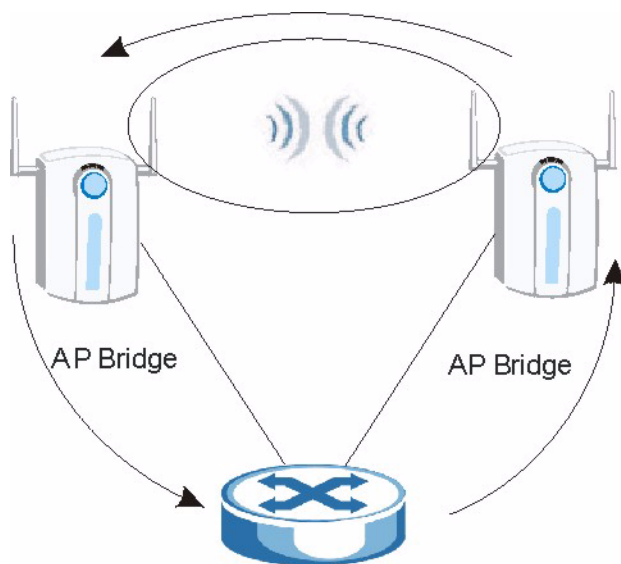
In the example below, when both ZyXEL Devices are in Bridge/Repeater mode, they form a WDS (Wireless Distribution System) allowing the computers in LAN 1 to connect to the computers in LAN 2.



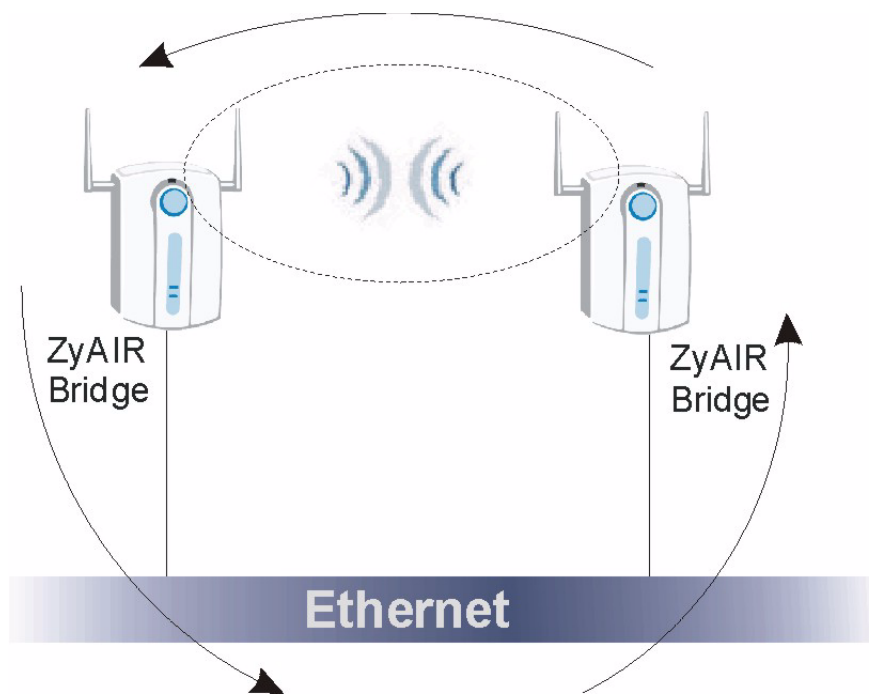
**Figure 49** Bridging Example

Be careful to avoid bridge loops when you enable bridging in the ZyXEL Device. Bridge loops cause broadcast traffic to circle the network endlessly, resulting in possible throughput degradation and disruption of communications. The following examples show two network topologies that can lead to this problem:

- If two or more ZyXEL Devices (in bridge mode) are connected to the same hub.

**Figure 50** Bridge Loop: Two Bridges Connected to Hub

- If your ZyXEL Device (in bridge mode) is connected to a wired LAN while communicating with another wireless bridge that is also connected to the same wired LAN.

**Figure 51** Bridge Loop: Bridge Connected to Wired LAN

To prevent bridge loops, ensure that you enable STP in the **Wireless** screen or your ZyXEL Device is not set to bridge mode while connected to both wired and wireless segments of the same LAN.

To have the ZyXEL Device act as a wireless bridge only, click **WIRELESS > Wireless** and select **Bridge/Repeater** as the **Operating Mode**.

**Figure 52** Wireless: Bridge/Repeater

**Wireless**

Operating Mode: Bridge/Repeater

802.11 Mode: 802.11b+g

Choose Channel ID: Channel-06 2437MHz

RTS/CTS Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)

Fragmentation Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)

Output Power: 100%

☒ Enable WDS Security

☐ TKIP (ZyAIR Series Compatible)

☐ AES

Index	Active	Remote Bridge MAC	PSK
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11:22:33:44:55:66	55ACE678
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	

☒ Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

Apply Reset

The following table describes the bridge labels in this screen.

**Table 24** Wireless: Bridge/Repeater

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Operating Mode	Select <b>Bridge/Repeater</b> in this field.
802.11 mode	<p>Select <b>802.11b Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select <b>802.11g Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select <b>802.11b+g</b> to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced.</p> <p>Select <b>802.11a</b> (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p>
Choose Channel ID	<p>Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region.</p> <p>To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click <b>MAINTENANCE</b> and then the <b>Channel Usage</b> tab to open the <b>Channel Usage</b> screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network.</p> <p>To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click <b>Scan</b> instead.</p>
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to zero turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between <b>256</b> and <b>2346</b> .
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between <b>256</b> and <b>2346</b> .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select from <b>100% (Full Power)</b> , <b>50%</b> , <b>25%</b> , <b>12.5%</b> and <b>Minimum</b> . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Enable WDS Security	<p>Select this to turn on security for the ZyXEL Device's Wireless Distribution System (WDS). A Wireless Distribution System is a wireless connection between two or more APs. If you do not select the check box, traffic between APs is not encrypted.</p> <p><b>Note: WDS security is independent of the security settings between the ZyXEL Device and any wireless clients.</b></p> <p>When you enable WDS security, also do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the type of security you want to use (<b>TKIP</b> or <b>AES</b>) to secure traffic on your WDS.</li> <li>• Enter a pre-shared key in the <b>PSK</b> field for each access point in your WDS. Each access point can use a different pre-shared key.</li> <li>• Configure WDS security and the relevant PSK in each of your other access point(s).</li> </ul> <p><b>Note: Other APs must use the same encryption method to enable WDS security.</b></p>

**Table 24** Wireless: Bridge/Repeater

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
TKIP (ZyAIR Series Compatible)	<p>Select this to enable Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) security on your WDS. This option is compatible with other ZyXEL access points including that support WDS security. Use this if the other access points on your network support WDS security but do not have an AES option.</p> <p><b>Note: Check your other AP's documentation to make sure it supports WDS security.</b></p> <p><b>Note: At the time of writing, this option is compatible with other ZyXEL NWA Series and G-3000/G-3000H access points only.</b></p>
AES	<p>Select this to enable Advanced Encryption System (AES) security on your WDS. AES provides superior security to TKIP. Use AES if the other access points on your network support it for the WDS.</p> <p><b>Note: At the time of writing, this option is compatible with other ZyXEL NWA-3160 access points only.</b></p>
#	This is the index number of the bridge connection.
Active	Select the check box to enable the bridge connection. Otherwise, clear the check box to disable it.
Remote Bridge MAC Address	Type the MAC address of the peer device in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
PSK	Type a pre-shared key (PSK) from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols). You must also set the peer device to use the same pre-shared key. Each peer device can use a different pre-shared key.

See [Table 23 on page 91](#) for information on the other labels in this screen.

### 6.7.3 AP+Bridge Mode

Select **AP+Bridge** as the **Operating Mode** in the **WIRELESS > Wireless** screen to have the ZyXEL Device function as a bridge and access point simultaneously. See the section on applications for more information.

Figure 53 Wireless: AP+Bridge

Wireless

SSID

Security

RADIUS

Layer-2 Isolation

MAC Filter

Operating Mode

AP+Bridge

802.11 Mode

802.11b+g

☒ Super Mode

Choose Channel ID

Channel-06 2437MHz

RTS/CTS Threshold

2346

(256 ~ 2346)

Fragmentation Threshold

2346

(256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)

Output Power

100%

SSID Profile

Guest2

☐ Enable WDS Security

☒ TKIP (ZyAIR Series Compatible)

☒ AES

Index	Active	Remote Bridge MAC	PSK
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	

☒ Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

☐ Enable Roaming

Apply

Reset

See the tables describing the fields in the **Access Point** and **Bridge/Repeater** operating modes for descriptions of the fields in this screen.

6.7.4 MBSSID Mode

Select **MBSSID** as the **Operating Mode** to display the screen. Refer to [Chapter 8 on page 115](#) for configuration and detailed information. See [Chapter 7 on page 99](#) for details on the security settings.



# Wireless Security Configuration

This chapter describes how to use the **Security** and **RADIUS** screens to configure wireless security on your ZyXEL Device.

## 7.1 Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless stations, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the ZyXEL Device are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by MAC address and hiding the ZyXEL Device's identity.

### 7.1.1 Encryption

- Use WPA(2) security if you have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients. WPA(2) uses either an external RADIUS server or the internal authentication server. WPA has user authentication and improved data encryption over WEP.
- Use WPA(2)-PSK if you have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients but no RADIUS server, or do not want to use the internal authentication server.
- If you don't have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients, then use WEP key encrypting. A higher bit key offers better security. You can manually enter 64-bit, 128-bit or 152-bit WEP keys.

### 7.1.2 Restricted Access

The **MAC Filter** screen allows you to configure the AP to give exclusive access to devices (**Allow Association**) or exclude them from accessing the AP (**Deny Association**).

### 7.1.3 Hide Identity

If you hide the SSID, then the ZyXEL Device cannot be seen when a wireless client scans for local APs. The trade-off for the extra security of "hiding" the ZyXEL Device may be inconvenience for some valid WLAN clients.

### 7.1.4 WEP Encryption

WEP encryption scrambles the data transmitted between the wireless stations and the access points to keep network communications private. It encrypts unicast and multicast communications in a network. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key.

Your ZyXEL Device allows you to configure up to four 64-bit, 128-bit or 152-bit WEP keys but only one key can be enabled at any one time.

## 7.2 802.1x Overview

The IEEE 802.1x standard outlines enhanced security methods for both the authentication of wireless stations and encryption key management. Authentication can be done using a RADIUS server.

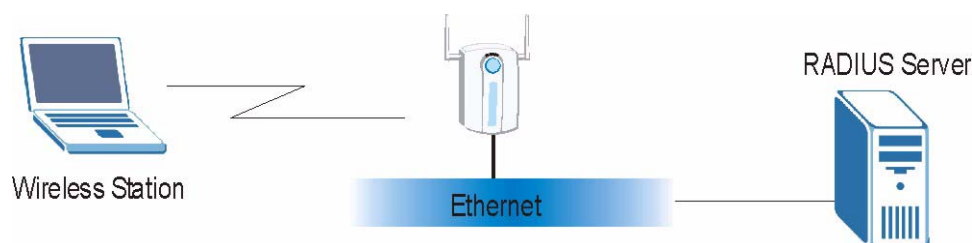
## 7.3 EAP Authentication Overview

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, the access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server or the AP. The ZyXEL Device supports EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, EAP-MD5 and PEAP with RADIUS. Refer to the Types of EAP Authentication appendix for descriptions on the common types.

The following figure shows an overview of authentication when you specify a RADIUS server on your access point.

**Figure 54** EAP Authentication



The details below provide a general description of how IEEE 802.1x EAP authentication works. For an example list of EAP-MD5 authentication steps, see the IEEE 802.1x appendix.

- 1 The wireless station sends a “start” message to the ZyXEL Device.
- 2 The ZyXEL Device sends a “request identity” message to the wireless station for identity information.
- 3 The wireless station replies with identity information, including username and password.
- 4 The RADIUS server checks the user information against its user profile database and determines whether or not to authenticate the wireless station.

## 7.4 Introduction to WPA

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. Key differences between WPA and WEP are user authentication and improved data encryption.



### 7.4.1 User Authentication

WPA applies IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using a RADIUS database. See later in this chapter and the appendices for more information on IEEE 802.1x, RADIUS, EAP and PEAP.

If you don't have a RADIUS server you should use WPA-PSK (WPA -Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a client will be granted access to a WLAN.

### 7.4.2 Encryption

WPA improves data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x.

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. It includes a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

TKIP regularly changes and rotates the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice. The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), TKIP makes it much more difficult to decode data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP, making it difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA and WPA-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs an easier-to-use, consistent, single, alphanumeric password.

### 7.4.3 WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and allows it to join the network only if the password matches.

- 3 The AP derives and distributes key information to the wireless clients. The key itself is not sent over the network, but is derived from the PSK and information exchanged between the AP and the client.
- 4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process to encrypt data exchanged between them.

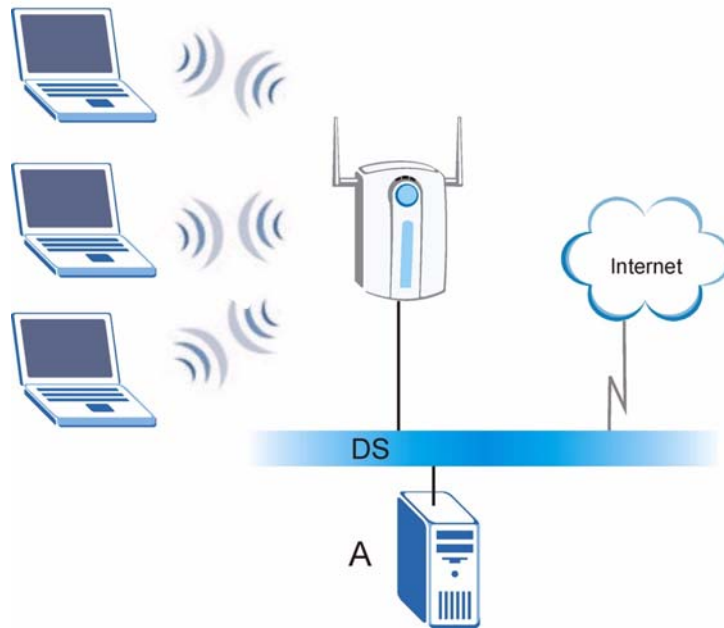
**Figure 55** WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



## 7.5 WPA(2) with External RADIUS Application Example

You need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. “A” is the RADIUS server. “DS” is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client’s authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- 3 The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

**Figure 56** WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

## 7.6 Security Modes

The following table describes the security modes you can configure.

**Table 25** Security Modes

SECURITY MODE	DESCRIPTION
None	Select this to have no data encryption.
WEP	Select this to use WEP encryption.
802.1x-Only	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with no data encryption.
802.1x-Static64	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with a static 64bit WEP key and an authentication server.
802.1x-Static128	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with a static 128bit WEP key and an authentication server.
WPA	Select this to use WPA.
WPA-PSK	Select this to use WPA with a pre-shared key.
WPA2	Select this to use WPA2.
WPA2-MIX	Select this to use either WPA2 or WPA depending on which security mode the wireless client uses.
WPA2-PSK	Select this to use WPA2 with a pre-shared key.
WPA2-PSK-MIX	Select this to use either WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK, depending on which security mode the wireless client uses.

## 7.7 Wireless Client WPA Supplicants


A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client, and Meetinghouse Data Communications' AEGIS client.

The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

## 7.8 Wireless Security Effectiveness

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your ZyXEL Device. EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is used for authentication and utilizes static WEP key exchange. It requires interaction with a RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) server either on the WAN or your LAN to provide authentication service for wireless stations.

**Table 26** Wireless Security Levels

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least Secure    Most Secure	Unique SSID (Default)
	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
	WPA2

If you do not enable any wireless security on your ZyXEL Device, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device within range.

## 7.9 Configuring Security



**The following screens are configurable only in Access Point, AP+Bridge and MBSSID operating modes only.**

Use the Security screen to create secure profiles. A security profile is a group of configuration settings which can be assigned to an SSID profile in the **SSID** configuration screen.

You can configure up to 16 security profiles.

To change your ZyXEL Device's wireless security settings, click **WIRELESS > Security**.

**Figure 57** Wireless > Security

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																																																																				
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Security Mode</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>security01</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>security02</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>security03</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>security04</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>5</td><td>security05</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>6</td><td>security06</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>7</td><td>security07</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>8</td><td>security08</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>9</td><td>security09</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>10</td><td>security10</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>11</td><td>security11</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>12</td><td>security12</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>13</td><td>security13</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>14</td><td>security14</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>15</td><td>security15</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>16</td><td>security16</td><td>None</td></tr> </tbody> </table>							Index	Profile Name	Security Mode		1	security01	None		2	security02	None		3	security03	None		4	security04	None		5	security05	None		6	security06	None		7	security07	None		8	security08	None		9	security09	None		10	security10	None		11	security11	None		12	security12	None		13	security13	None		14	security14	None		15	security15	None		16	security16	None
	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode																																																																						
	1	security01	None																																																																						
	2	security02	None																																																																						
	3	security03	None																																																																						
	4	security04	None																																																																						
	5	security05	None																																																																						
	6	security06	None																																																																						
	7	security07	None																																																																						
	8	security08	None																																																																						
	9	security09	None																																																																						
	10	security10	None																																																																						
	11	security11	None																																																																						
	12	security12	None																																																																						
	13	security13	None																																																																						
	14	security14	None																																																																						
	15	security15	None																																																																						
	16	security16	None																																																																						
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>																																																																									

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 27** WIRELESS > Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the security profile.
Profile Name	This field displays a name given to a security profile in the <b>Security</b> configuration screen.
Security Mode	This field displays the security mode this security profile uses.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click <b>Edit</b> to configure security settings for that profile.

The next screen varies according to the **Security Mode** you select.

### 7.9.1 Security: WEP

Select **WEP** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

**Figure 58** WIRELESS > Security: WEP

Wireless SSID Security RADIUS Layer-2 Isolation MAC Filter

Name : security02

Security Mode : WEP

WEP Encryption : 64-bit WEP

Authentication Method : Auto

64-bit WEP: Enter 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).  
 128-bit WEP: Enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).  
 152-bit WEP: Enter 16 ASCII characters or 32 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).

☒ ASCII ☐ Hex

☒ Key 1 ☐ Key 2 ☐ Key 3 ☐ Key 4

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 28** Security: WEP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose <b>WEP</b> in this field.
WEP Encryption	Select <b>Disable</b> to allow wireless stations to communicate with the access points without any data encryption. Select <b>64-bit WEP</b> , <b>128-bit WEP</b> or <b>152-bit WEP</b> to enable data encryption.
Authentication Method	Select <b>Auto</b> , <b>Open System</b> or <b>Shared Key</b> from the drop-down list box. The default setting is <b>Auto</b> .
ASCII	Select this option to enter ASCII characters as the WEP keys.
Hex	Select this option to enter hexadecimal characters as the WEP keys. The preceding "0x" is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4	The WEP keys are used to encrypt data. Both the ZyXEL Device and the wireless stations must use the same WEP key for data transmission. If you chose <b>64-bit WEP</b> , then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose <b>128-bit WEP</b> , then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose <b>152-bit WEP</b> , then enter 16 ASCII characters or 32 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). You must configure all four keys, but only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 7.9.2 Security: 802.1x Only

Select **802.1x-Only** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

**Figure 59** Security: 802.1x Only

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p><b>Name :</b> <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p><b>Security Mode :</b> <input type="text" value="8021x-Only"/></p> <p><b>ReAuthentication Timer :</b> <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout :</b> <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 29** Security: 802.1x Only

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose <b>802.1x Only</b> in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is <b>1800</b> seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.</p> <p><b>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</b></p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the user name and password again before access to the wired network is allowed.</p> <p>The default time interval is <b>3600</b> seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 7.9.3 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

Select **802.1x Static 64** or **802.1x Static 128** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

**Figure 60** Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name : <input type="text" value="security04"/>					
Security Mode : <input type="text" value="8021x-Static128"/>					
Enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4). <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> ASCII           <input type="radio"/> Hex           </div>					
<div style="display: flex;"> <div style="flex: 1;"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1  <input type="radio"/> Key 2  <input type="radio"/> Key 3  <input type="radio"/> Key 4           </div> <div style="flex: 4;"> <input type="text"/>  <input type="text"/>  <input type="text"/>  <input type="text"/> </div> </div>					
ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)					
Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)					
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 30** Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose <b>802.1x Static 64</b> or <b>802.1x Static 128</b> in this field.
ASCII	Select this option to enter ASCII characters as the WEP keys.
Hex	Select this option to enter hexadecimal characters as the WEP keys. The preceding "0x" is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4	<p>If you chose <b>802.1x Static 64</b>, then enter any 5 characters (ASCII string) or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") preceded by 0x for each key.</p> <p>If you chose <b>802.1x Static 128-bit</b>, then enter 13 characters (ASCII string) or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") preceded by 0x for each key.</p> <p>There are four data encryption keys to secure your data from eavesdropping by unauthorized wireless users. The values for the keys must be set up exactly the same on the access points as they are on the wireless stations.</p> <p>The preceding "0x" is entered automatically. You must configure all four keys, but only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.</p>
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is <b>1800</b> seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.</p> <p><b>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</b></p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the user name and password again before access to the wired network is allowed.</p> <p>The default time interval is <b>3600</b> seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



## 7.9.4 Security: WPA

Select **WPA** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

**Figure 61** Security: WPA

The screenshot shows a configuration interface for WPA security. It features a series of tabs at the top: Wireless, SSID, Security (selected), RADIUS, Layer-2 Isolation, and MAC Filter. Below the tabs, there are several configuration fields:
 

- Name :** A text box containing 'security02'.
- Security Mode :** A dropdown menu with 'WPA' selected.
- ReAuthentication Timer :** A text box with '1800' and a note '( in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)'.
- Idle Timeout :** A text box with '3600' and a note '( in seconds)'.
- Group Key Update Timer :** A text box with '1800' and a note '( in seconds)'.

 At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 31** Security: WPA

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose <b>WPA</b> in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is <b>1800</b> seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.  <b>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</b>
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the user name and password again before access to the wired network is allowed. The default time interval is <b>3600</b> seconds (or 1 hour).
Group Key Update Timer	The <b>Group Key Update Timer</b> is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the <b>Group Key Update Timer</b> is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 7.9.5 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

Select **WPA2** or **WPA2-MIX** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

**Figure 62** Security:WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p><b>Name :</b> <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p><b>Security Mode :</b> <input type="text" value="WPA2-MIX"/></p> <p><b>ReAuthentication Timer :</b> <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout :</b> <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p><b>Group Key Update Timer :</b> <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds)</p> <p><b>PMK Cache :</b> <input type="text" value="Enable"/></p> <p><b>Pre-Authentication :</b> <input type="text" value="Disable"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels not previously discussed

**Table 32** Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose <b>WPA2</b> or <b>WPA2-MIX</b> in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is <b>1800</b> seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.</p> <p><b>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</b></p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the username and password again before access to the wired network is allowed.</p> <p>The default time interval is <b>3600</b> seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Group Key Update Timer	<p>The <b>Group Key Update Timer</b> is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the <b>Group Key Update Timer</b> is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device's default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).</p>
PMK Cache	<p>When a wireless client moves from one AP's coverage area to another, it performs an authentication procedure (exchanging security information) with the new AP. Instead of re-authenticating a client each time it returns to the AP's coverage area, which can cause delays to time-sensitive applications, the AP and the client can store (or "cache") and use information about their previous authentication. Select <b>Enable</b> to allow PMK caching, or <b>Disable</b> to switch this feature off.</p>
Pre-Authentication	<p>Pre-authentication allows a wireless client to perform authentication with a different AP from the one to which it is currently connected, before moving into the new AP's coverage area. This speeds up roaming. Select <b>Enable</b> to allow pre-authentication, or <b>Disable</b> to switch it off.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 7.9.6 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK-MIX

Select **WPA-PSK**, **WPA2-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK-MIX** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

**Figure 63** Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX

The following table describes the labels not previously discussed

**Table 33** Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose <b>WPA-PSK</b> , <b>WPA2-PSK</b> or <b>WPA2-PSK-MIX</b> in this field.
Pre-Shared Key	The encryption mechanisms used for <b>WPA</b> and <b>WPA-PSK</b> are the same. The only difference between the two is that <b>WPA-PSK</b> uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is <b>1800</b> seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.  <b>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</b>
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the username and password again before access to the wired network is allowed. The default time interval is <b>3600</b> seconds (or 1 hour).
Group Key Update Timer	The <b>Group Key Update Timer</b> is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the <b>Group Key Update Timer</b> is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device's default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 7.10 Introduction to RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication and accounting, where the access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks, among others:

- Authentication  
Determines the identity of the users.
- Accounting  
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

The ZyXEL Device is equipped with an internal RADIUS server. See [Section 13.1 on page 151](#) for more details.

## 7.11 Configuring RADIUS

Use RADIUS if you want to authenticate wireless users using the internal authentication server (see [Section 13.1 on page 151](#)) or an external server.

You can configure up to four RADIUS server profiles. Each profile also has one backup authentication server and a backup accounting server. These profiles can be assigned to an SSID profile in the **SSID** configuration screen

To set up your ZyXEL Device's RADIUS server settings, click **WIRELESS > RADIUS**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 64** RADIUS

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 34** RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	Select the RADIUS profile you want to configure from the drop-down list box.
Profile Name	Type a name for the RADIUS profile associated with the <b>Index</b> number above.
Primary	Configure the fields below to set up user authentication and accounting.

**Table 34 RADIUS**

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Backup	If the ZyXEL Device cannot communicate with the <b>Primary</b> accounting server, you can have the ZyXEL Device use a <b>Backup</b> RADIUS server. Make sure the <b>Active</b> check boxes are selected if you want to use backup servers. The ZyXEL Device will attempt to communicate three times before using the <b>Backup</b> servers. Requests can be issued from the client interface to use the backup server. The length of time for each authentication is decided by the wireless client or based on the configuration of the <b>ReAuthentication Timer</b> field in the <b>Security</b> screen.
RADIUS Option	
Internal	Select this check box to use the ZyXEL Device's internal authentication server. The <b>Active</b> , <b>RADIUS Server IP Address</b> , <b>RADIUS Server Port</b> and <b>Share Secret</b> fields are not available when you use the internal authentication server.
External	Select this check box to use an external authentication server. The ZyXEL Device does not use the internal authentication server when this check box is enabled.
Active	Select the check box to enable user authentication through an external authentication server. This check box is not available when you select <b>Internal</b> .
RADIUS Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external authentication server in dotted decimal notation. This field is not available when you select <b>Internal</b> .
RADIUS Server Port	Enter the port number of the external authentication server. The default port number is 1812. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so. This field is not available when you select <b>Internal</b> .
Share Secret	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external authentication server and the ZyXEL Device. The key must be the same on the external authentication server and your ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network. This field is not available when you select <b>Internal</b> .
Active	Select the check box to enable user accounting through an external authentication server.
Accounting Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
Accounting Server Port	Enter the port number of the external accounting server. The default port number is 1813. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so with additional information.
Share Secret	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external accounting server and the ZyXEL Device. The key must be the same on the external accounting server and your ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# MBSSID and SSID

This chapter describes how to configure and use your ZyXEL Device's MBSSID mode and configure SSID profiles.

## 8.1 Wireless LAN Infrastructures

See the Wireless LAN chapter for some basic WLAN scenarios and terminology.

### 8.1.1 MBSSID

Traditionally, you needed to use different APs to configure different Basic Service Sets (BSSs). As well as the cost of buying extra APs, there was also the possibility of channel interference. The ZyXEL Device's MBSSID (Multiple Basic Service Set Identifier) function allows you to use one access point to provide several BSSs simultaneously. You can then assign varying levels of privilege to different SSIDs.

Wireless stations can use different BSSIDs to associate with the same AP.

### 8.1.2 Notes on Multiple BSS

- A maximum of eight BSSs are allowed on one AP simultaneously.
- You must use different WEP keys for different BSSs. If two stations have different BSSIDs (they are in different BSSs), but have the same WEP keys, they may hear each other's communications (but not communicate with each other).
- MBSSID should not replace but rather be used in conjunction with 802.1x security.

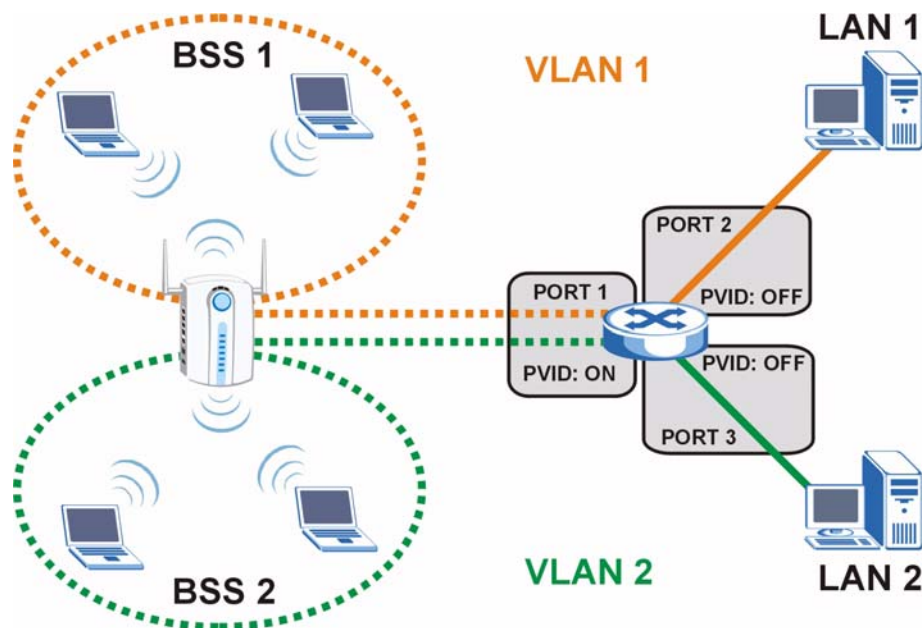
### 8.1.3 Multiple BSS Example

Refer to the applications section for more information.

### 8.1.4 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example

In this example, VLAN 1 includes the computers in BSS1 and LAN 1. Computers in BSS2 and LAN 2 belong to VLAN 2. Users in BSS1 are limited to accessing the resources on LAN 1 and similarly users in BSS2 may only access resources on LAN 2. VLAN 2 is the management VLAN.

The switch adds PVID (Port VLAN IDentity) tags to incoming frames that don't already have tags (on switch ports where PVID is enabled).

**Figure 65** Multiple BSS with VLAN Example

### 8.1.5 Configuring Multiple BSSs

Click **WIRELESS > Wireless** and select **MBSSID** in the **Operating Mode** drop-down list box to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 66** Wireless: Multiple BSS

Wireless			SSID			Security			RADIUS			Layer-2 Isolation			MAC Filter		
<b>Operating Mode</b> <span>MBSSID</span>																	
<b>802.11 Mode</b> <span>802.11b+g</span>																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Super Mode</b>																	
<b>Choose Channel ID</b> <span>Channel-06 2437MHz</span> or <span>Scan</span>																	
<b>RTS/CTS Threshold</b> <span>2346</span> (256 ~ 2346)																	
<b>Fragmentation Threshold</b> <span>2346</span> (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)																	
<b>Output Power</b> <span>100%</span>																	
<b>Select SSID Profile</b>																	
Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile												
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span>Guest2</span>												
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span>Guest2</span>												
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<span>Guest2</span>	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span>Guest2</span>												
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span>SSID04</span>	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span>Guest2</span>												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Enable Roaming</b>																	
<div style="text-align: right;"> <span>Apply</span> <span>Reset</span> </div>																	



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 35** Wireless: Multiple BSS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select <b>MBSSID</b> in this field to display the screen as shown
802.11 Mode	<p>Select <b>802.11b Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select <b>802.11g Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select <b>802.11b+g</b> to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced.</p> <p>Select <b>802.11a</b> (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p>
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click <b>MAINTENANCE</b> and then the <b>Channel Usage</b> tab to open the <b>Channel Usage</b> screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click <b>Scan</b> instead.
Scan	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device automatically select the wireless channel with the lowest interference.
RTS/CTS Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with a frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to its lowest value (256) turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between <b>256</b> and <b>2346</b> .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following <b>100%(Full Power)</b> , <b>50%</b> , <b>25%</b> , <b>12.5%</b> or <b>Minimum</b> . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Select SSID Profile	<p>An SSID profile is the set of parameters relating to one of the ZyXEL Device's BSSs. The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating with the access point (AP) must have the same SSID.</p> <p><b>Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.</b></p>
Index	Select the check box to activate an SSID profile.

**Table 35** Wireless: Multiple BSS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile	Select the profile(s) of the SSIDs you want to use in your wireless network. You can have up to eight BSSs running on the ZyXEL Device simultaneously, one of which is always the pre-configured VoIP_SSID profile and another of which is always the pre-configured Guest_SSID profile. Configure SSID profiles in the <b>SSID</b> screen.
Enable Spanning Tree Control (STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP - compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network. Select the check box to activate STP on the ZyXEL Device.
Roaming Active	Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this checkbox to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet.  <b>Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.</b>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 8.2 SSID

When the ZyXEL Device is set to Access Point, AP+Bridge or MBSSID mode, you need to choose the SSID profile(s) you want to use in your wireless network (see [Section 6.6 on page 90](#) for more information on operating modes).

Use the **WIRELESS > SSID** screen to see information about the SSID profiles on the ZyXEL Device, and use the **WIRELESS > SSID > Edit** screen to configure the SSID profiles.

### 8.2.1 The SSID Screen

Click **WIRELESS > SSID** to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 67** SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter			
	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	Isolation01	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 36** SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of each SSID profile.
Name	This field displays the identification name of each SSID profile on the ZyXEL Device.
SSID	This field displays the name of the wireless profile on the network. When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Security	This field indicates which security profile is currently associated with each SSID profile. See <a href="#">Section 7.9 on page 104</a> for more information.
RADIUS	This field displays which RADIUS profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, if you have a RADIUS server configured.
QoS	This field displays the Quality of Service setting for this profile or <b>NONE</b> if QoS is not configured on a profile.
Layer 2 Isolation	This field displays which layer 2 isolation profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, or <b>Disable</b> if Layer 2 Isolation is not configured on an SSID profile.
MAC Filter	This field displays which MAC filter profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, or <b>Disable</b> if MAC filtering is not configured on an SSID profile.
Edit	Click the radio button next to the profile you want to configure and click <b>Edit</b> to go to the SSID configuration screen.

## 8.2.2 Configuring SSID

Each SSID profile references the settings configured in the following screens:

- **WIRELESS > Security** (one of the security profiles).
- **WIRELESS > RADIUS** (one of the RADIUS profiles).
- **WIRELESS > MAC Filter** (the MAC filter list, if activated in the SSID profile).
- **WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation** (the layer 2 isolation list, if activated in the SSID profile).
- Also, use the **VLAN** screen to set up wireless VLANs based on SSID.

Configure the fields in the above screens to use the settings in an SSID profile.

Select an SSID profile in the **WIRELESS > SSID** screen and click **Edit** to display the following screen.

**Figure 68** Configuring SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name		SSID04			
SSID		TA_PoM			
Hide Name(SSID)		Disable			
Security		security01			
RADIUS		radius01			
QoS		NONE			
Layer-2 Isolation		Disable			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking		Disable			
MAC Filtering		Disable			
		Apply		Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 37** Configuring SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a name identifying this profile.
SSID	When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Hide Name (SSID)	Select <b>Disable</b> if you want the ZyXEL Device to broadcast this SSID (a wireless client scanning for an AP will find this SSID). Alternatively, select <b>Enable</b> to have the ZyXEL Device hide this SSID (a wireless client scanning for an AP will not find this SSID).
Security	Select a security profile to use with this SSID profile. See <a href="#">Section 7.9 on page 104</a> for more information.
RADIUS	Select a RADIUS profile from the drop-down list box, if you have a RADIUS server configured. If you do not need to use RADIUS authentication, ignore this field. See <a href="#">Section 7.11 on page 112</a> for more information.

**Table 37** Configuring SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
QoS	<p>Select the Quality of Service priority for this BSS's traffic.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the pre-configured <b>VoIP_SSID</b> profile, the QoS setting is <b>VoIP</b>. This is not user-configurable. The <b>VoIP</b> setting is available only on the <b>VoIP_SSID</b> profile, and provides the highest level of QoS.</li> <li>If you select <b>WMM</b> from the QoS list, the priority of a data packet depends on the packet's IEEE 802.1q or DSCP header. See <a href="#">Section 6.3.1 on page 85</a> for more information on WMM and WMM priorities. If a packet has no WMM value assigned to it, it is assigned the default priority.</li> <li>If you select <b>ATC</b> from the QoS list, the ZyXEL Device automatically assigns priority based on packet size. See <a href="#">Section 6.3.2 on page 85</a> for more information on ATC.</li> <li>If you select <b>ATC+WMM</b> from the QoS list, the ZyXEL Device uses WMM on the wireless network and ATC on the wired network. See <a href="#">Section 6.3.3 on page 86</a> for more information on ATC+WMM.</li> <li>If you select <b>WMM_VOICE</b>, <b>WMM_VIDEO</b>, <b>WMM_BEST_EFFORT</b> or <b>WMM_BACKGROUND</b>, the ZyXEL Device applies that QoS setting to all of that SSID's traffic.</li> <li>If you select <b>NONE</b>, the ZyXEL Device applies no priority to traffic on this SSID.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note: When you configure an SSID profile's QoS settings, the ZyXEL Device applies the same QoS setting to all of the profile's traffic.</b></p>
Layer-2 Isolation	Select a layer 2 isolation profile from the drop-down list box. If you do not want to use layer 2 isolation on this profile, select <b>Disable</b> . See <a href="#">Section 9.1 on page 123</a> for more information.
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking	Select <b>Enable</b> from the drop-down list box to prevent wireless clients in this profile's BSS from communicating with one another.
MAC Filtering	Select a MAC filter profile from the drop-down list box. If you do not want to use MAC filtering on this profile, select <b>Disable</b> . See <a href="#">Section 9.4 on page 128</a> for more information.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# Other Wireless Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure the **Layer-2 Isolation** and **MAC Filter** screens on your ZyXEL Device.

## 9.1 Layer-2 Isolation Introduction

Layer-2 isolation is used to prevent wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.

In the following example, layer-2 isolation is enabled on the ZyXEL Device (**Z**, in the figure) to allow a guest wireless client (**A**) to access the main network router (**B**). The router provides access to the Internet (**C**) and the network printer (**D**) while preventing the client from accessing other computers and servers on the network. The client can communicate with other wireless clients only if **Intra-BSS Traffic blocking** is disabled.

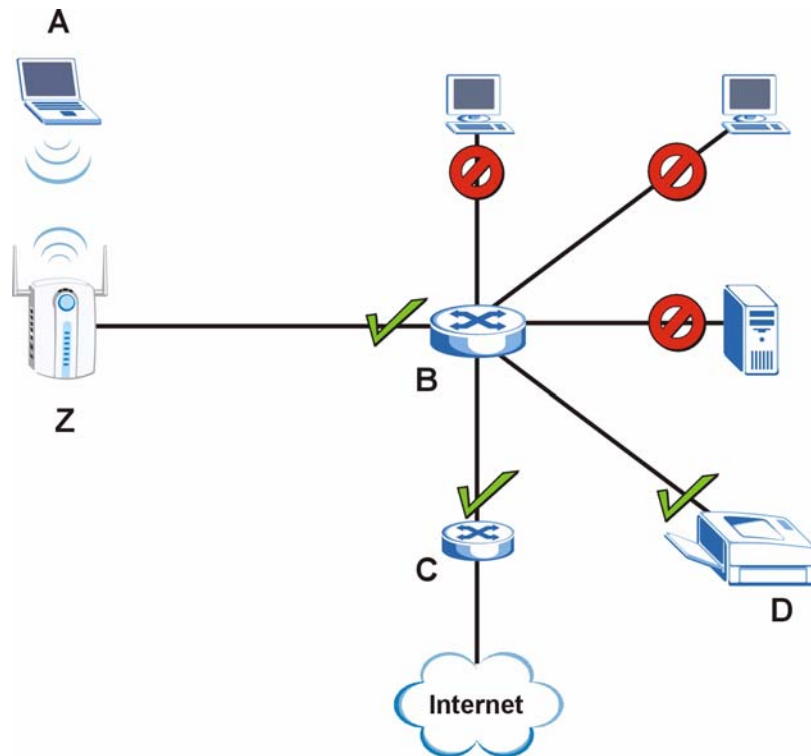


---

**Intra-BSS Traffic Blocking is activated when you enable layer-2 isolation.**

---

### Figure 69 Layer-2 Isolation Application



MAC addresses that are not listed in the **Allow devices with these MAC addresses** table are blocked from communicating with the ZyXEL Device's wireless clients except for broadcast packets. Layer-2 isolation does not check the traffic between wireless clients that are associated with the same AP. Intra-BSS Traffic allows wireless clients associated with the same AP to communicate with each other.

## 9.2 The Layer-2 Isolation Screen

Click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation**. The screen appears as shown next.



**Figure 70** WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																																																			
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>l2isolation01</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>l2isolation02</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>Guest_Iso</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>l2isolation04</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>5</td><td>l2isolation05</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>6</td><td>l2isolation06</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>7</td><td>l2isolation07</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>8</td><td>l2isolation08</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>9</td><td>l2isolation09</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>10</td><td>l2isolation10</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>11</td><td>l2isolation11</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>12</td><td>l2isolation12</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>13</td><td>l2isolation13</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>14</td><td>l2isolation14</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>15</td><td>l2isolation15</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>16</td><td>l2isolation16</td></tr> </tbody> </table>							Index	Profile Name		1	l2isolation01		2	l2isolation02		3	Guest_Iso		4	l2isolation04		5	l2isolation05		6	l2isolation06		7	l2isolation07		8	l2isolation08		9	l2isolation09		10	l2isolation10		11	l2isolation11		12	l2isolation12		13	l2isolation13		14	l2isolation14		15	l2isolation15		16	l2isolation16
	Index	Profile Name																																																						
	1	l2isolation01																																																						
	2	l2isolation02																																																						
	3	Guest_Iso																																																						
	4	l2isolation04																																																						
	5	l2isolation05																																																						
	6	l2isolation06																																																						
	7	l2isolation07																																																						
	8	l2isolation08																																																						
	9	l2isolation09																																																						
	10	l2isolation10																																																						
	11	l2isolation11																																																						
	12	l2isolation12																																																						
	13	l2isolation13																																																						
	14	l2isolation14																																																						
	15	l2isolation15																																																						
	16	l2isolation16																																																						
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>																																																								

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 38** WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the profile.
Profile Name	This field displays the name given to a layer-2 isolation profile in the <b>Layer-2 Isolation Configuration</b> screen.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click <b>Edit</b> to configure settings for that profile.

## 9.3 Configuring Layer-2 Isolation

To configure layer-2 isolation, click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation > Edit**. The screen appears as shown.



If layer-2 isolation is enabled, you need to know the MAC address of each wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow to communicate with the ZyXEL Device's wireless clients.

**Figure 71** WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration Screen

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<b>Layer-2 Isolation Configuration</b>					
Profile Name		l2isolation01			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:00:00:00:00		17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	00:00:00:00:00:00		21	00:00:00:00:00:00	
6	00:00:00:00:00:00		22	00:00:00:00:00:00	
7	00:00:00:00:00:00		23	00:00:00:00:00:00	
8	00:00:00:00:00:00		24	00:00:00:00:00:00	
9	00:00:00:00:00:00		25	00:00:00:00:00:00	
10	00:00:00:00:00:00		26	00:00:00:00:00:00	
11	00:00:00:00:00:00		27	00:00:00:00:00:00	
12	00:00:00:00:00:00		28	00:00:00:00:00:00	
13	00:00:00:00:00:00		29	00:00:00:00:00:00	
14	00:00:00:00:00:00		30	00:00:00:00:00:00	
15	00:00:00:00:00:00		31	00:00:00:00:00:00	
16	00:00:00:00:00:00		32	00:00:00:00:00:00	
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 39** WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Type a name to identify this layer-2 isolation profile.
Allow devices with these MAC addresses	These are the MAC address of a wireless client, AP, computer or router. A wireless client associated with the ZyXEL Device can communicate with another wireless client, AP, computer or router only if the MAC addresses of those devices are listed in this table.
Set	This is the index number of the MAC address.
MAC Address	Type the MAC addresses of the wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow the associated wireless clients to have access to in these address fields. Type the MAC address in a valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs, for example 12:34:56:78:9a:bc).
Description	Type a name to identify this device.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

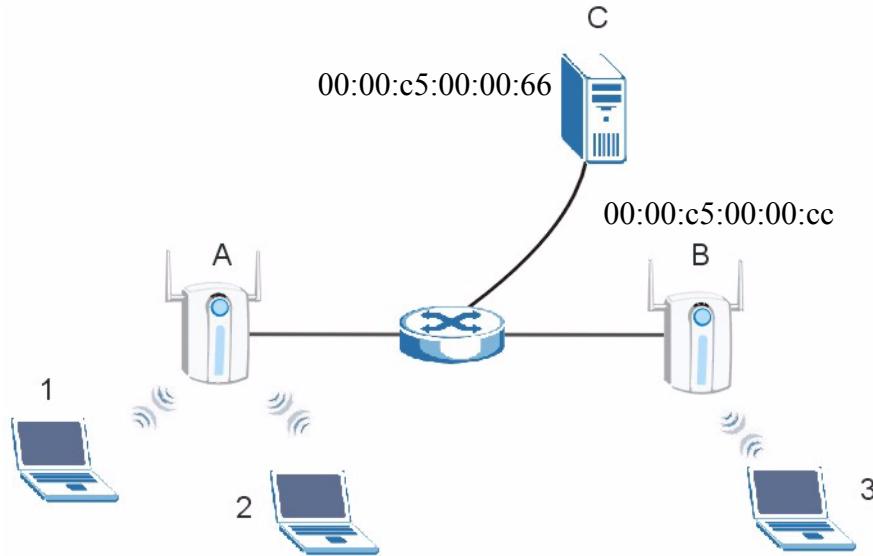
### 9.3.1 Layer-2 Isolation Examples

The following section shows you example layer-2 isolation configurations on the ZyXEL Device (A).



**When configuring, remember to select the correct layer-2 isolation profile in the **WIRELESS > SSID > Edit** screen of the relevant SSID profile.**

**Figure 72** Layer-2 Isolation Example Configuration



### 9.3.1.1 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1

In the following example wireless clients **1** and **2** can communicate with file server **C**, but not access point **B** or wireless client **3**.

- Enter **C**'s MAC address in the **MAC Address** field, and enter "File Server C" in the **Description** field.

**Figure 73** Layer-2 Isolation Example 1

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Profile Name		l2isolation01			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	File Server C	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	

### 9.3.1.2 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2

In the following example wireless clients **1** and **2** can communicate with access point **B** and file server **C** but not wireless client **3**.

- Enter the server's and your ZyXEL Device's MAC addresses in the **MAC Address** fields. Enter "File Server C" in **C**'s **Description** field, and enter "Access Point B" in **B**'s **Description** field.

**Figure 74** Layer-2 Isolation Example 2

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Profile Name		l2isolation01			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	File Server C	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:c5:00:00:cc	Access Point B	18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	

## 9.4 The MAC Filter Screen

The MAC filter function allows you to configure the ZyXEL Device to give exclusive access to devices (Allow Association) or exclude devices from accessing the ZyXEL Device (Deny Association).

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC address of each device to configure MAC filtering on the ZyXEL Device.

The MAC filter profile is a user-configured list of MAC addresses. Each SSID profile can reference one MAC filter profile. The ZyXEL Device provides 16 MAC Filter profiles, each of which can hold up to 32 MAC addresses.

Click WIRELESS > MAC Filter. The screen displays as shown.

**Figure 75** WIRELESS > MAC Filter

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																																																																				
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Filter Action</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>macfilter01</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>macfilter02</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>macfilter03</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>macfilter04</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>5</td><td>macfilter05</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>6</td><td>macfilter06</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>7</td><td>macfilter07</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>8</td><td>macfilter08</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>9</td><td>macfilter09</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>10</td><td>macfilter10</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>11</td><td>macfilter11</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>12</td><td>macfilter12</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>13</td><td>macfilter13</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>14</td><td>macfilter14</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>15</td><td>macfilter15</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>16</td><td>macfilter16</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> </tbody> </table>							Index	Profile Name	Filter Action		1	macfilter01	Deny Association		2	macfilter02	Deny Association		3	macfilter03	Deny Association		4	macfilter04	Deny Association		5	macfilter05	Deny Association		6	macfilter06	Deny Association		7	macfilter07	Deny Association		8	macfilter08	Deny Association		9	macfilter09	Deny Association		10	macfilter10	Deny Association		11	macfilter11	Deny Association		12	macfilter12	Deny Association		13	macfilter13	Deny Association		14	macfilter14	Deny Association		15	macfilter15	Deny Association		16	macfilter16	Deny Association
	Index	Profile Name	Filter Action																																																																						
	1	macfilter01	Deny Association																																																																						
	2	macfilter02	Deny Association																																																																						
	3	macfilter03	Deny Association																																																																						
	4	macfilter04	Deny Association																																																																						
	5	macfilter05	Deny Association																																																																						
	6	macfilter06	Deny Association																																																																						
	7	macfilter07	Deny Association																																																																						
	8	macfilter08	Deny Association																																																																						
	9	macfilter09	Deny Association																																																																						
	10	macfilter10	Deny Association																																																																						
	11	macfilter11	Deny Association																																																																						
	12	macfilter12	Deny Association																																																																						
	13	macfilter13	Deny Association																																																																						
	14	macfilter14	Deny Association																																																																						
	15	macfilter15	Deny Association																																																																						
	16	macfilter16	Deny Association																																																																						
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>																																																																									

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 40** WIRELESS > MAC Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the profile.
Profile Name	This field displays the name given to a MAC filter profile in the <b>MAC Filter Configuration</b> screen.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click <b>Edit</b> to configure settings for that profile.

### 9.4.1 Configuring MAC Filtering

To change your ZyXEL Device's MAC filter settings, click **WIRELESS > MAC Filter > Edit**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 76** MAC Address Filter

MAC Address Filter

Profile Name:

Filter Action:

Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:00:00:00:00		17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	00:00:00:00:00:00		21	00:00:00:00:00:00	
6	00:00:00:00:00:00		22	00:00:00:00:00:00	
7	00:00:00:00:00:00		23	00:00:00:00:00:00	
8	00:00:00:00:00:00		24	00:00:00:00:00:00	
9	00:00:00:00:00:00		25	00:00:00:00:00:00	
10	00:00:00:00:00:00		26	00:00:00:00:00:00	
11	00:00:00:00:00:00		27	00:00:00:00:00:00	
12	00:00:00:00:00:00		28	00:00:00:00:00:00	
13	00:00:00:00:00:00		29	00:00:00:00:00:00	
14	00:00:00:00:00:00		30	00:00:00:00:00:00	
15	00:00:00:00:00:00		31	00:00:00:00:00:00	
16	00:00:00:00:00:00		32	00:00:00:00:00:00	

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 41** MAC Address Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Type a name to identify this profile.
Filter Action	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the MAC address filter table. Select <b>Deny Association</b> to block access to the router. MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the router. Select <b>Allow Association</b> to permit access to the router. MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the router.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC addresses (in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format) of the wireless station to be allowed or denied access to the ZyXEL Device.
Description	Type a name to identify this wireless station.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



**To activate MAC filtering on an SSID profile, select the correct filter from the Enable MAC Filtering drop-down list box in the WIRELESS > SSID > Edit screen and click Apply.**

## 9.5 Configuring Roaming

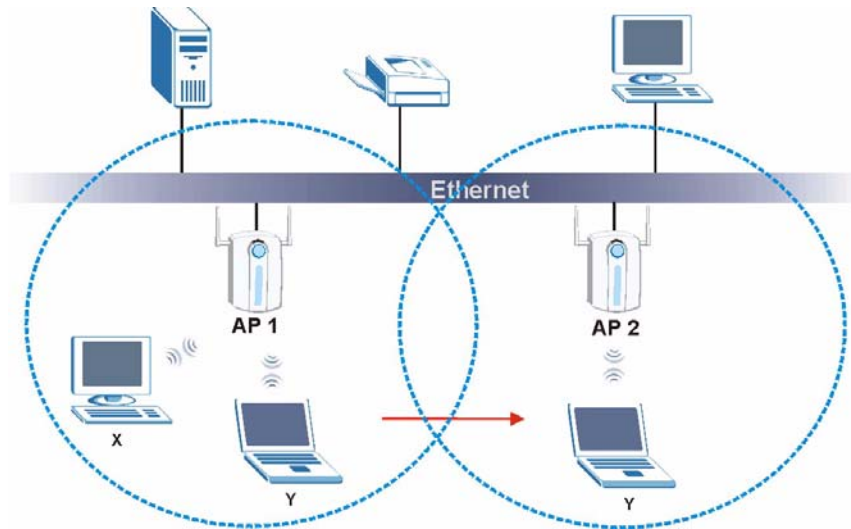
A wireless station is a device with an IEEE 802.11a/b/g compliant wireless interface. An access point (AP) acts as a bridge between the wireless and wired networks. An AP creates its own wireless coverage area. A wireless station can associate with a particular access point only if it is within the access point's coverage area.

In a network environment with multiple access points, wireless stations are able to switch from one access point to another as they move between the coverage areas. This is known as roaming. As the wireless station moves from place to place, it is responsible for choosing the most appropriate access point depending on the signal strength, network utilization or other factors.

The roaming feature on the access points allows the access points to relay information about the wireless stations to each other. When a wireless station moves from a coverage area to another, it scans and uses the channel of a new access point, which then informs the other access points on the LAN about the change. An example is shown in [Figure 77 on page 131](#).

With roaming, a wireless LAN mobile user enjoys a continuous connection to the wired network through an access point while moving around the wireless LAN.

Enable roaming to exchange the latest bridge information of all wireless stations between APs when a wireless station moves between coverage areas. Wireless stations can still associate with other APs even if you disable roaming. Enabling roaming ensures correct traffic forwarding (bridge tables are updated) and maximum AP efficiency. The AP deletes records of wireless stations that associate with other APs (Non-ZyXEL APs may not be able to perform this). 802.1x authentication information is not exchanged (at the time of writing).

**Figure 77** Roaming Example

The steps below describe the roaming process.

- 1 Wireless station **Y** moves from the coverage area of access point **AP 1** to that of access point **AP 2**.
- 2 Wireless station **Y** scans and detects the signal of access point **AP 2**.
- 3 Wireless station **Y** sends an association request to access point **AP 2**.
- 4 Access point **AP 2** acknowledges the presence of wireless station **Y** and relays this information to access point **AP 1** through the wired LAN.
- 5 Access point **AP 1** updates the new position of wireless station **Y**.

### 9.5.1 Requirements for Roaming

The following requirements must be met in order for wireless stations to roam between the coverage areas.

- 1 All the access points must be on the same subnet and configured with the same ESSID.
- 2 If IEEE 802.1x user authentication is enabled and to be done locally on the access point, the new access point must have the user profile for the wireless station.
- 3 The adjacent access points should use different radio channels when their coverage areas overlap.
- 4 All access points must use the same port number to relay roaming information.
- 5 The access points must be connected to the Ethernet and be able to get IP addresses from a DHCP server if using dynamic IP address assignment.

To enable roaming on your ZyXEL Device, click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 78** Roaming

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the ZyXEL NWA-3160, specifically the 'Roaming' section. The page has tabs for 'Wireless', 'SSID', 'Security', 'RADIUS', 'Layer-2 Isolation', and 'MAC Filter'. The 'Wireless' tab is selected. The configuration options include:

- Operating Mode: MBSSID
- 802.11 Mode: 802.11b+g
- Super Mode: ☐
- Choose Channel ID: Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan
- RTS/CTS Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)
- Fragmentation Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)
- Output Power: 100%
- Select SSID Profile:

Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID05
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID06
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest2	7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID07
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID08

Below the table, there are two checkboxes:

- ☒ Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)
- ☒ Enable Roaming

The 'Enable Roaming' checkbox is highlighted with a red circle. At the bottom of the page, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

Select the **Roaming Active** check box and click **Apply**.



# IP Screen

This chapter discusses how to configure IP on the ZyXEL Device.

## 10.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults

The Ethernet parameters of the ZyXEL Device are preset in the factory with the following values:

- 1 IP address of 192.168.1.2
- 2 Subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (24 bits)

These parameters should work for the majority of installations.

## 10.2 TCP/IP Parameters

### 10.2.1 WAN IP Address Assignment

Every computer on the Internet must have a unique IP address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (only between your two branch offices, for instance) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks.

**Table 42** Private IP Address Ranges

10.0.0.0	-	10.255.255.255
172.16.0.0	-	172.31.255.255
192.168.0.0	-	192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or have it assigned by a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.



Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, Address Allocation for Private Internets and RFC 1466, Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space.

## 10.3 Configuring IP

Click **IP** to display the screen shown next.

**Figure 79** IP Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 43** IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address Assignment	
Get automatically from DHCP	Select this option if your ZyXEL Device is using a dynamically assigned IP address from a DHCP server each time.  <b>Note: You must know the IP address assigned to the ZyXEL Device (by the DHCP server) to access the ZyXEL Device again.</b>
Use fixed IP address	Select this option if your ZyXEL Device is using a static IP address. When you select this option, fill in the fields below.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation.  <b>Note: If you change the ZyXEL Device's IP address, you must use the new IP address if you want to access the web configurator again.</b>
IP Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Gateway IP Address	Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your ZyXEL Device that will forward the packet to the destination. On the LAN, the gateway must be a router on the same segment as your ZyXEL Device; over the WAN, the gateway must be the IP address of one of the remote nodes.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# Rogue AP

This chapter discusses rogue wireless access points (APs) and how to configure the ZyXEL Device's rogue AP detection feature.

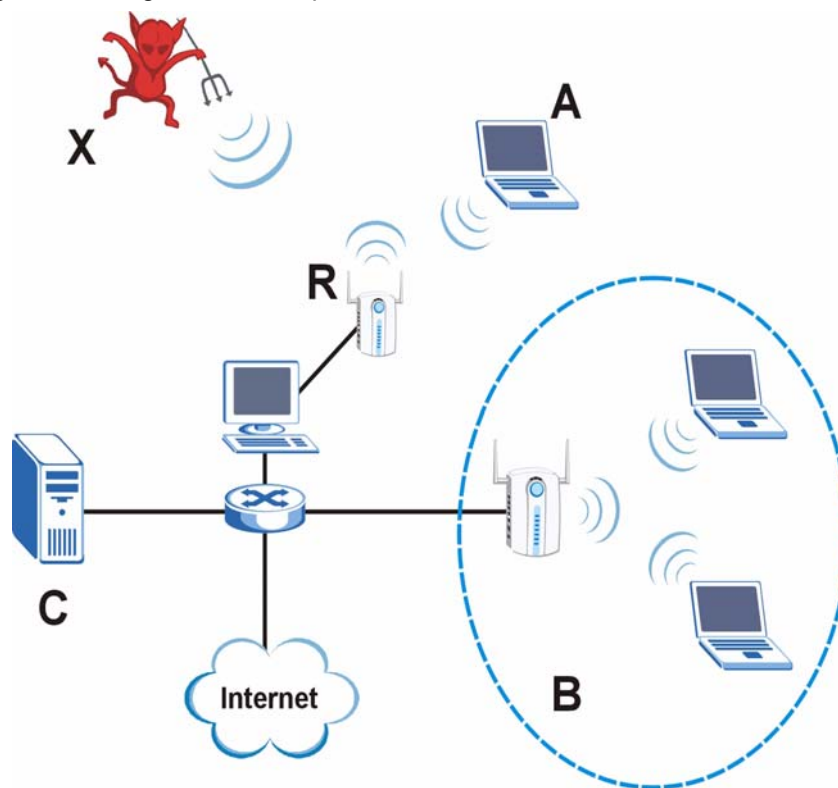
## 11.1 Rogue AP Introduction

A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network's coverage area that is not a sanctioned part of that network. Rogue APs are not under the control of the network's administrators, and can open up holes in a network's security. Attackers can take advantage of a rogue AP's weaker (or non-existent) security to gain access to the network, or set up their own rogue APs in order to capture information from wireless clients. If a scan reveals a rogue AP, you can use commercially-available software to physically locate it.

Note that it is not necessary for a network to have a legitimate wireless LAN component for rogue APs to open the network to an attacker. In this case, any AP detected can be classified as rogue.

## 11.2 Rogue AP Examples

In the following example, a corporate network's security is compromised by a rogue AP (**R**) set up by an employee at his workstation in order to allow him to connect his notebook computer wirelessly (**A**). The company's legitimate wireless network (the dashed ellipse **B**) is well-secured, but the rogue AP uses inferior security that is easily broken by an attacker (**X**) running readily available encryption-cracking software. In this example, the attacker now has access to the company network, including sensitive data stored on the file server (**C**).

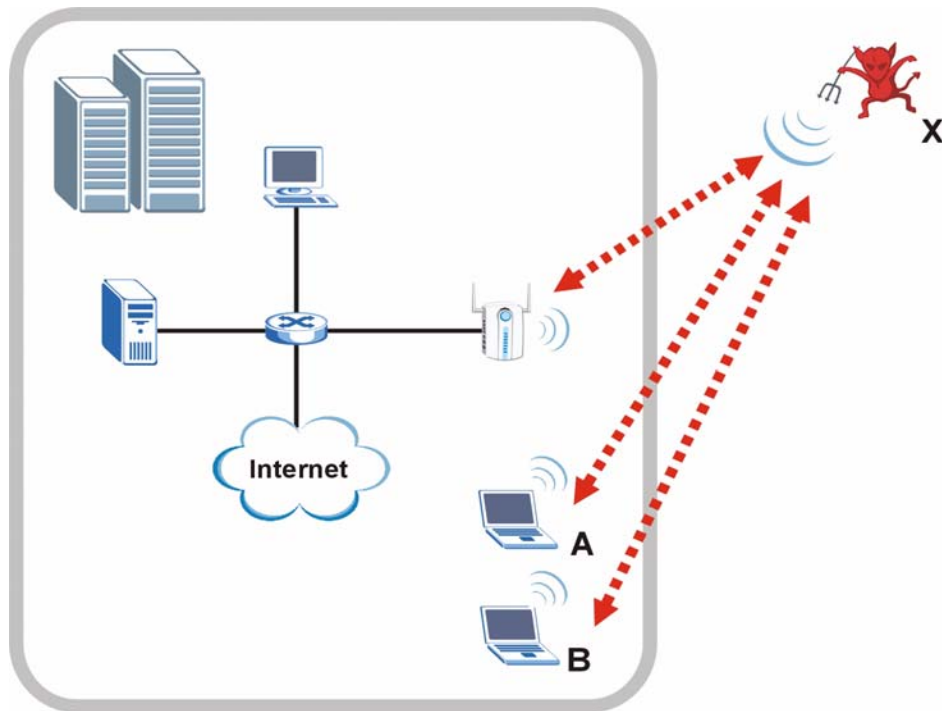
**Figure 80** Rogue AP: Example

### 11.2.1 “Honeypot” Attack

Rogue APs need not be connected to the legitimate network to pose a severe security threat. In the following example, an attacker (**X**) is stationed in a vehicle outside a company building, using a rogue access point equipped with a powerful antenna. By mimicking a legitimate (company network) AP, the attacker tries to capture usernames, passwords, and other sensitive information from unsuspecting clients (**A** and **B**) who attempt to connect. This is known as a “honeypot” attack.

If a rogue AP in this scenario has sufficient power and is broadcasting the correct SSID (Service Set Identifier) clients have no way of knowing that they are not associating with a legitimate company AP. The attacker can forward network traffic from associated clients to a legitimate AP, creating the impression of normal service. This is a variety of “man-in-the-middle” attack.

This scenario can also be part of a wireless denial of service (DoS) attack, in which associated wireless clients are deprived of network access. Other opportunities for the attacker include the introduction of malware (malicious software) into the network.

**Figure 81** “Honeypot” Attack

## 11.3 Configuring Rogue AP Detection

You can configure the ZyXEL Device to detect rogue IEEE 802.11a (5 GHz - NWA-3160 only) and IEEE 802.11b/g (2.4 GHz) APs.

If you have more than one AP in your wireless network, you must also configure the list of “friendly” APs. Friendly APs are the other wireless access points in your network, as well as any others that you know are not a threat (those from neighboring networks, for example). It is recommended that you export (save) your list of friendly APs often, especially if you have a network with a large number of access points.

You can choose to scan for rogue APs manually, or to have the ZyXEL Device scan automatically at pre-defined intervals.

You can also set the ZyXEL Device to email you immediately when a rogue AP is detected (see [Chapter 15 on page 175](#) for information on how to set up email logs).

### 11.3.1 Rogue AP: Configuration

Click **ROGUE AP > Configuration**. The following screen appears.

**Figure 82** ROGUE AP > Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 44** ROGUE AP > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Rogue AP Period Detection	Select <b>Yes</b> to turn rogue AP detection on. You must also enter a time value in the <b>Period</b> field. Select <b>No</b> to turn rogue AP detection off.
Period (minutes)	Enter the period you want the ZyXEL Device to wait between scanning for rogue APs (between 10 and 60 minutes). You must also select <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Active Rogue AP Period Detection</b> field.
Friendly AP List	
Export	Click this button to save the current list of friendly APs' MAC addresses and descriptions (as displayed in the <b>ROGUE AP &gt; Friendly AP</b> screen) to your computer.
File Path	Enter the location of a previously-saved friendly AP list to upload to the ZyXEL Device. Alternatively, click the <b>Browse</b> button to locate a list.
Browse	Click this button to locate a previously-saved list of friendly APs to upload to the ZyXEL Device.
Import	Click this button to upload the previously-saved list of friendly APs displayed in the <b>File Path</b> field to the ZyXEL Device.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your settings.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to return all fields in this screen to their previously-saved values.

### 11.3.2 Rogue AP: Friendly AP

The friendly AP list displays details of all the access points in your area that you know are not a threat. If you have more than one AP in your network, you need to configure this list to include your other APs. If your wireless network overlaps with that of a neighbor (for example) you should also add these APs to the list, as they do not compromise your own network's security. If you do not add them to the friendly AP list, these access points will appear in the **Rogue AP** list each time the ZyXEL Device scans.

**Figure 83** ROGUE AP > Friendly AP

#	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description	
1	00:a0:00:00:00:00	0_01	2	WPA	First floor lobby	
2	00:00:a0:00:00:00	0_02	2	WPA	Second Floor Design	
3	00:00:00:00:00:03	1201	4	WPA	Coffee Shop WLAN	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 45** ROGUE AP > Friendly AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add Friendly AP	Use this section to manually add a wireless access point to the list. You must know the device's MAC address.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the AP you wish to add to the list.
Description	Enter a short, explanatory description identifying the AP with a maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters. Spaces, underscores (_) and dashes (-) are allowed.
Add	Click this button to include the AP in the list.
Friendly AP List	This is the list of safe wireless access points you have already configured.
#	This is the index number of the AP's entry in the list.
MAC Address	This field displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the AP. All wireless devices have a MAC address that uniquely identifies them.
SSID	This field displays the Service Set Identifier (also known as the network name) of the AP.
Channel	This field displays the wireless channel the AP is currently using.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless encryption the AP is currently using.
Description	This is the description you entered when adding the AP to the list.
Delete	Click this button to remove an AP's entry from the list.

### 11.3.3 Rogue AP List

This list displays details of all IEEE 802.11a (NWA-3160 only) and IEEE 802.11b/g wireless access points within the ZyXEL Device's coverage area, except for the ZyXEL Device itself and the access points included in the friendly AP list (see [Section 11.3.2 on page 138](#)).

You can set how often you want the ZyXEL Device to scan for rogue APs in the **ROGUE AP > Configuration** screen (see [Section 11.3.1 on page 137](#)).

Click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 84** ROGUE AP > Rogue AP

Rogue AP List						
#	Active	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:08:02:00:07	3	2	WPAPSK	
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:01:00:20:90:DA	65	11	WPAPSK	

Add To Friendly AP List    Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 46** ROGUE AP > Rogue AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rogue AP List	This displays details of access points in the ZyXEL Device's coverage area that are not listed in the friendly AP list (see <a href="#">Section 11.3.2 on page 138</a> )
Refresh	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device scan for rogue APs.
#	This is the index number of the AP's entry in the list.
Active	Use this check box to select the APs you want to move to the friendly AP list (see <a href="#">Section 11.3.2 on page 138</a> )
MAC Address	This field displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the AP. All wireless devices have a MAC address that uniquely identifies them.
SSID	This field displays the Service Set Identifier (also known as the network name) of the AP.
Channel	This field displays the wireless channel the AP is currently using.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless encryption the AP is currently using.
Description	If you want to move the AP's entry to the friendly AP list, enter a short, explanatory description identifying the AP before you click <b>Add to Friendly AP List</b> . A maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters are allowed in this field. Spaces, underscores (_) and dashes (-) are allowed.
Add to Friendly AP List	If you know that the AP described in an entry is not a threat, select the <b>Active</b> check box, enter a short description in the <b>Description</b> field and click this button to add the entry to the friendly AP list (see <a href="#">Section 11.3.2 on page 138</a> ). When the ZyXEL Device next scans for rogue APs, the selected AP does not appear in the rogue AP list.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to return all fields in this screen to their default values.



# Remote Management Screens

This chapter provides information on the Remote Management screens.

## 12.1 Remote Management Overview

Remote management allows you to determine which services/protocols can access which of the ZyXEL Device's interfaces (if any) from which computers.

You may manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

**Table 47** Remote Management Overview

- |            |                      |
|------------|----------------------|
| • WLAN     | • ALL (LAN and WLAN) |
| • LAN only | • Neither (Disable). |

To disable remote management of a service, select **Disable** in the corresponding **Server Access** field.

You may only have one remote management session running at a time. The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a remote management session of lower priority when another remote management session of higher priority starts. The priorities for the different types of remote management sessions are as follows.

- 1 Telnet
- 2 HTTP

### 12.1.1 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management over LAN or WLAN will not work when:

- 1 You have disabled that service in one of the remote management screens.
- 2 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 3 There is already another remote management session with an equal or higher priority running. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.

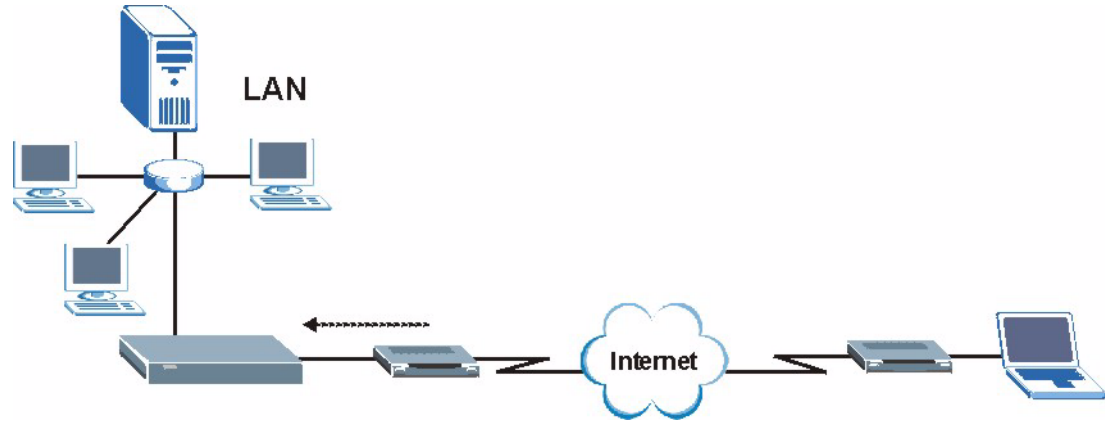
### 12.1.2 System Timeout

There is a default system management idle timeout of five minutes (three hundred seconds). The ZyXEL Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling. You can change the timeout period in the **System** screen

## 12.2 Configuring Telnet

You can configure your ZyXEL Device for remote Telnet access as shown next. The administrator uses Telnet from a computer on a remote network to access the ZyXEL Device.

**Figure 85** Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network



Click **REMOTE MGNT** tab to display the **TELNET** screen as shown.

**Figure 86** Remote Management: Telnet

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 48** Remote Management: Telnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TELNET	
Server Port	You can change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using Telnet.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose <b>Selected</b> to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
SSH	

**Table 48** Remote Management: Telnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Certificate	Select the certificate whose corresponding private key is to be used to identify the ZyXEL Device for SSH connections. You must have certificates already configured in the <b>Certificates &gt; My Certificates</b> screen.
Server Port	You can change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using SSH.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose <b>Selected</b> to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 12.3 Configuring FTP

You can upload and download the ZyXEL Device’s firmware and configuration files using FTP, please see the chapter on firmware and configuration file maintenance for details. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

To change your ZyXEL Device’s FTP settings, click **REMOTE MGMT > FTP**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 87** Remote Management: FTP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 49** Remote Management: FTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.

**Table 49** Remote Management: FTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose <b>Selected</b> to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 12.4 Configuring WWW

To change your ZyXEL Device’s World Wide Web settings, click **REMOTE MGNT > WWW**.

**Figure 88** Remote Management: WWW

The screenshot shows the 'WWW' configuration screen. It has a title bar 'WWW'. Below it, there are three rows of settings: 'Server Port' with a text box containing '80', 'Server Access' with a dropdown menu showing 'WLAN & LAN', and 'Secured Client IP Address' with radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text box containing '0.0.0.0'. Below these is a section header 'HTTPS'. This section has a 'Server Certificate' dropdown showing 'auto\_generated\_self\_signed\_cert' with a link '(See My Certificates)', a checkbox 'Authenticate Client Certificates (See Trusted CAs)' which is unchecked, 'Server Port' with a text box containing '443', 'Server Access' with a dropdown menu showing 'WLAN & LAN', and 'Secured Client IP Address' with radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text box containing '0.0.0.0'. At the bottom of the screen are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 50** Remote Management: WWW

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WWW	
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose <b>Selected</b> to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
HTTPS	

**Table 50** Remote Management: WWW

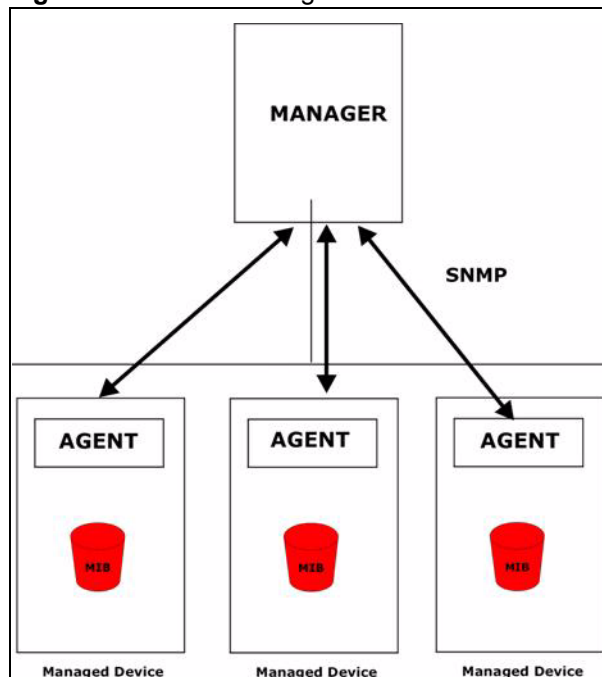
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Certificate	Select the <b>Server Certificate</b> that the ZyXEL Device will use to identify itself. The ZyXEL Device is the SSL server and must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the ZyXEL Device).
Authenticate Client Certificates	Select <b>Authenticate Client Certificates</b> (optional) to require the SSL client to authenticate itself with the ZyXEL Device by sending the ZyXEL Device a certificate. To do that the SSL client must have a CA-signed certificate from a CA that has been imported as a trusted CA on the ZyXEL Device (see the appendix on importing certificates for details).
Server Port	The HTTPS proxy server listens on port 443 by default. If you change the HTTPS proxy server port to a different number on the ZyXEL Device, for example 8443, then you must notify people who need to access the ZyXEL Device web configurator to use "https://ZyXEL Device IP Address: <b>8443</b> " as the URL.
Server Access	Select a ZyXEL Device interface from <b>Server Access</b> on which incoming HTTPS access is allowed. You can allow only secure web configurator access by setting the <b>HTTP Server Access</b> field to <b>Disable</b> and setting the <b>HTTPS Server Access</b> field to an interface(s).
Secured Client IP Address	A secure client is a "trusted" computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose <b>Selected</b> to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 12.5 SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your ZyXEL Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the ZyXEL Device through the network. The ZyXEL Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and version two (SNMPv2c). The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.



**SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.**

**Figure 89** SNMP Management Model

An SNMP managed network consists of two main types of component: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device (the ZyXEL Device). An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
- Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

### 12.5.1 Supported MIBs

The ZyXEL Device supports MIB II that is defined in RFC-1213 and RFC-1215 as well as the proprietary ZyXEL private MIB. The purpose of the MIBs is to let administrators collect statistical data and monitor status and performance.

## 12.5.2 SNMP Traps

The ZyXEL Device can send the following traps to the SNMP manager.

**Table 51** SNMP Traps

TRAP NAME	OBJECT IDENTIFIER # (OID)	DESCRIPTION
Generic Traps		
coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent after booting (power on). This trap is defined in RFC-1215.
warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent after booting (software reboot). This trap is defined in RFC-1215.
linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
authenticationFailure (defined in <i>RFC-1215</i> )	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	The device sends this trap when it receives any SNMP get or set requirements with the wrong community (password). Note: snmpEnableAuthenTraps, OID 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.30 (defined in RFC 1214 and RFC 1907) must be enabled on in order for the device to send authenticationFailure traps. Use a MIB browser to enable or disable snmpEnableAuthenTraps.
Traps defined in the ZyXEL Private MIB.		
whyReboot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.13.0.1	This trap is sent with the reason for restarting before the system reboots (warm start). "System reboot by user!" is added for an intentional reboot (for example, download new files, CLI command "sys reboot"). If the system reboots because of fatal errors, a code for the error is listed.
pwTFTPStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.2.3.3.1	This trap is sent to indicate the status and result of a TFTP client session that has ended.

## 12.6 SNMP Traps

Some traps include an SNMP interface index. The following table maps the SNMP interface indexes to the ZyXEL Device's physical and virtual ports.

**Table 52** SNMP Interface Index to Physical and Virtual Port Mapping

TYPE	INTERFACE	PORT
Physical	enet0	Wireless LAN adaptor WLAN1
	enet1	Ethernet port (LAN)
	enet2	Wireless LAN adaptor WLAN2
Virtual	enet3 ~ enet9	WLAN1 in MBSSID mode
	enet10 ~ enet16	WLAN2 in MBSSID mode
	enet17 ~ enet21	WLAN1 in WDS mode
	enet22 ~ enet26	WLAN2 in WDS mode

## 12.6.1 Configuring SNMP

To change your ZyXEL Device's SNMP settings, click **REMOTE MGMT**, then the **SNMP** tab. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 90** Remote Management: SNMP

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Management: SNMP' configuration interface. At the top, there are four tabs: TELNET, FTP, WWW, and SNMP. The 'SNMP' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'SNMP Configuration' with four input fields: 'Get Community' (value: public), 'Set Community' (value: public), 'Community' (value: public), and 'Destination' (value: 0.0.0.0). Below this is another section titled 'SNMP' with three input fields: 'Service Port' (value: 161), 'Service Access' (value: WLAN & LAN), and 'Secured Client IP Address' (value: All). At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 53** Remote Management: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SNMP Configuration	
Get Community	Enter the <b>Get Community</b> , which is the password for the incoming Get and GetNext requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests.
Set Community	Enter the <b>Set community</b> , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests.
Community	Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The default is public and allows all requests.
Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
SNMP	
Service Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Service Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a "trusted" computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose <b>Selected</b> to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.



**Table 53** Remote Management: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# Internal RADIUS Server

The ZyXEL Device can use its internal RADIUS server to authenticate wireless clients. It can also serve as a RADIUS server to authenticate other APs and their wireless clients. For more background information on RADIUS, see [Section 7.10 on page 112](#).

## 13.1 Internal RADIUS Overview

The ZyXEL Device has a built-in RADIUS server that can authenticate wireless clients or other trusted APs.

The ZyXEL Device can function as an AP and as a RADIUS server at the same time.

PEAP (Protected EAP) and MD5 authentication is implemented on the internal RADIUS server using simple username and password methods over a secure TLS connection. See the appendices for more information on the types of EAP authentication and the internal RADIUS authentication method used in your ZyXEL Device.

- Use the **AUTH. SERVER > Setting** screen to turn the ZyAIR's internal RADIUS server off or on and to view information about the ZyXEL Device's certificates.
- Use the **AUTH. SERVER > Trusted AP** screen to specify APs as trusted. Trusted APs can use the ZyAIR's internal RADIUS server to authenticate wireless clients.
- Use the **AUTH. SERVER > Trusted Users** screen to configure a list of wireless client user names and passwords for the ZyAIR to authenticate.

## 13.2 Internal RADIUS Server Setting

The **AUTH. SERVER > Setting** screen displays information about certificates. The certificates are used by wireless clients to authenticate the RADIUS server. Information matching the certificate is held on the wireless client's utility. A password and user name on the utility must match the **Trusted Users** list so that the RADIUS server can be authenticated.



The internal RADIUS server does not support domain accounts (DOMAIN/user). When you configure your Windows XP SP2 Wireless Zero Configuration PEAP/MS-CHAPv2 settings, deselect the Use Windows logon name and password check box. When authentication begins, a pop-up dialog box requests you to type a Name, Password and Domain of the RADIUS server. Specify a name and password only, do not specify a domain.

Click **AUTH. SERVER > Setting**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 91** Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen

Index	Name	Type	Subject	Issuer	Valid From	Valid To
1	auto_generated_self_signed_cert	SELF	CN=NWA-3160 0019CB000001	CN=NWA-3160 0019CB000001	2000 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT	2030 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 54** Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select the <b>Active</b> check box to have the ZyXEL Device use its internal RADIUS server to authenticate wireless clients or other APs.
Index	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order. Use the <b>CERTIFICATES</b> screens to manage certificates. The internal RADIUS server uses one of the certificates listed in this screen to authenticate each wireless client. The exact certificate used depends on the certificate information configured on the wireless client.
Name	<p>This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.</p> <p><b>auto_generated_self_signed_cert</b> is the factory default certificate common to all ZyXEL Devices that use certificates.</p> <p><b>Note: It is recommended that you replace the factory default certificate with one that uses your ZyXEL Device's MAC address. Do this when you first log in to the ZyXEL Device or in the CERTIFICATES &gt; My Certificates screen.</b></p>

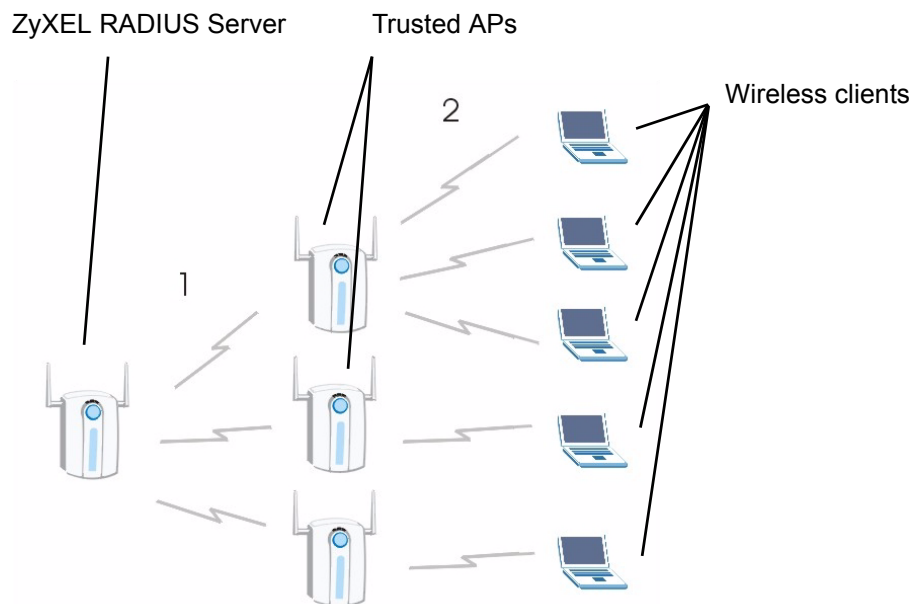
**Table 54** Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	<p>This field displays what kind of certificate this is.</p> <p><b>REQ</b> represents a certification request and is not yet a valid certificate. Send a certification request to a certification authority, which then issues a certificate. Use the <b>My Certificate Import</b> screen to import the certificate and replace the request.</p> <p><b>SELF</b> represents a self-signed certificate.</p> <p><b>*SELF</b> represents the default self-signed certificate, which the ZyXEL Device uses to sign imported trusted remote host certificates.</p> <p><b>CERT</b> represents a certificate issued by a certification authority.</p>
Subject	<p>This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as <b>CN</b> (Common Name), <b>OU</b> (Organizational Unit or department), <b>O</b> (Organization or company) and <b>C</b> (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.</p>
Issuer	<p>This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the <b>Subject</b> field.</p>
Valid From	<p>This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a <b>Not Yet Valid!</b> message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.</p>
Valid To	<p>This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an <b>Expiring!</b> or <b>Expired!</b> message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to have the ZyXEL Device use certificates to authenticate wireless clients.</p>
Reset	<p>Click <b>Reset</b> to start configuring this screen afresh.</p>

## 13.3 Trusted AP Overview

A trusted AP is an AP that uses the ZyXEL Device's internal RADIUS server to authenticate its wireless clients. Each wireless client must have a user name and password configured in the **AUTH. SERVER > Trusted Users** screen.

The following figure shows how this is done in two phases.

**Figure 92** Trusted AP Overview

- 1 Configure an IP address and shared secret in the **Trusted AP** database to authenticate an AP as a trusted AP.
- 2 Configure wireless client user names and passwords in the **Trusted Users** database to use a trusted AP as a relay between the ZyXEL Device's internal RADIUS server and the wireless clients. The wireless clients can then be authenticated by the ZyXEL Device's internal RADIUS server.

## 13.4 Configuring Trusted AP

To specify trusted APs, click the **AUTH SERVER** link under **ADVANCED** and then the **Trusted AP** tab. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 93** Trusted AP Screen

#	Active	IP Address	Shared Secret
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	127.0.0.1	Abcdabck
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
29	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
30	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
31	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
32	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 55** Trusted AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field displays the trusted AP index number.
Active	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device use the <b>IP Address</b> and <b>Shared Secret</b> to authenticate a trusted AP.
IP Address	Type the IP address of the trusted AP in dotted decimal notation.
Shared Secret	Enter a password (up to 31 alphanumeric characters, no spaces) as the key for encrypting communications between the AP and the ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the AP and the ZyXEL Device. Both the ZyXEL Device's IP address and this shared secret must also be configured in the "external RADIUS" server fields of the trusted AP.  <b>Note: The first trusted AP fields are for the ZyXEL Device itself.</b>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 13.5 Configuring Trusted Users

A trusted user entry consists of a wireless client user name and password. To configure trusted user entries, click **AUTH SERVER > Trusted Users**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 94** Trusted Users Screen

#	Active	User Name	Password
1	<input type="checkbox"/>		
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		
124	<input type="checkbox"/>		
125	<input type="checkbox"/>		
126	<input type="checkbox"/>		
127	<input type="checkbox"/>		
128	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Note: Password: Maximum 14 ASCII characters with PEAP

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 56** Trusted Users

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field displays the trusted user index number.
Active	Select this check box to have the ZyAIR authenticate wireless clients with the same user name and password activated on their wireless utilities.
User Name	Enter the user name for this user account. This name can be up to 31 alphanumeric characters long, including spaces. The wireless client's utility must use this name as its login name.
Password	Type a password (up to 31 ASCII characters) for this user profile. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays a (*) for each character you type. The password on the wireless client's utility must be the same as this password.  <b>Note: If you are using PEAP authentication, this password field is limited to 14 ASCII characters in length.</b>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# Certificates

This chapter gives background information about public-key certificates and explains how to use them.

## 14.1 Certificates Overview

The ZyXEL Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. You can use the ZyXEL Device to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

In public-key encryption and decryption, each host has two keys. One key is public and can be made openly available; the other key is private and must be kept secure. Public-key encryption in general works as follows.

- 1 Tim wants to send a private message to Jenny. Tim generates a public key pair. What is encrypted with one key can only be decrypted using the other.
- 2 Tim keeps the private key and makes the public key openly available.
- 3 Tim uses his private key to encrypt the message and sends it to Jenny.
- 4 Jenny receives the message and uses Tim's public key to decrypt it.
- 5 Additionally, Jenny uses her own private key to encrypt a message and Tim uses Jenny's public key to decrypt the message.

The ZyXEL Device uses certificates based on public-key cryptology to authenticate users attempting to establish a connection, not to encrypt the data that you send after establishing a connection. The method used to secure the data that you send through an established connection depends on the type of connection. For example, a VPN tunnel might use the triple DES encryption algorithm.

The certification authority uses its private key to sign certificates. Anyone can then use the certification authority's public key to verify the certificates.

A certification path is the hierarchy of certification authority certificates that validate a certificate. The ZyXEL Device does not trust a certificate if any certificate on its path has expired or been revoked.

Certification authorities maintain directory servers with databases of valid and revoked certificates. A directory of certificates that have been revoked before the scheduled expiration is called a CRL (Certificate Revocation List). The ZyXEL Device can check a peer's certificate against a directory server's list of revoked certificates. The framework of servers, software, procedures and policies that handles keys is called PKI (public-key infrastructure).

### 14.1.1 Advantages of Certificates

Certificates offer the following benefits.

- The ZyXEL Device only has to store the certificates of the certification authorities that you decide to trust, no matter how many devices you need to authenticate.
- Key distribution is simple and very secure since you can freely distribute public keys and you never need to transmit private keys.

## 14.2 Self-signed Certificates

You can have the ZyXEL Device act as a certification authority and sign its own certificates.

## 14.3 Verifying a Certificate

Before you import a trusted CA certificate into the ZyXEL Device, you should verify that you have the actual certificate. This is especially important since the ZyXEL Device also trusts any valid certificate signed by any of the imported trusted CA certificates.

### 14.3.1 Checking the Fingerprint of a Certificate on Your Computer

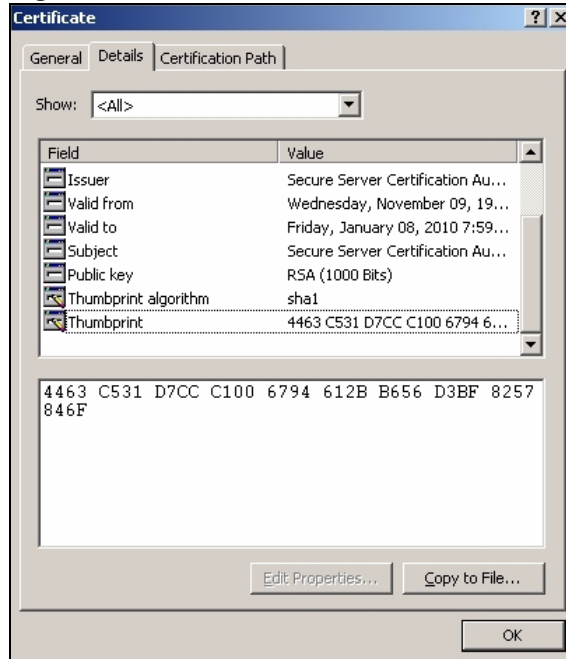
A certificate's fingerprints are message digests calculated using the MD5 or SHA1 algorithms. The following procedure describes how to check a certificate's fingerprint to verify that you have the actual certificate.

- 1 Browse to where you have the certificate saved on your computer.
- 2 Make sure that the certificate has a ".cer" or ".crt" file name extension.

**Figure 95** Certificates on Your Computer



- 3 Double-click the certificate's icon to open the **Certificate** window. Click the **Details** tab and scroll down to the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields.

**Figure 96** Certificate Details

- 4 Use a secure method to verify that the certificate owner has the same information in the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields. The secure method may vary according to your situation. Possible examples would be over the telephone or through an HTTPS connection.

## 14.4 Configuration Summary

This section summarizes how to manage certificates.

Use the **My Certificate** screens to generate and export self-signed certificates or certification requests and import the ZyXEL Devices' CA-signed certificates.

Use the **Trusted CA** screens to save CA certificates to the ZyXEL Device.

## 14.5 My Certificates

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** to open the ZyXEL Device's summary list of certificates and certification requests. Certificates display in black and certification requests display in gray. See the following figure.

**Figure 97** My Certificates

**My Certificates**    **Trusted CAs**

**PKI Storage Space in Use**

0%  100%

**Replace Factory Default Certificate**

Factory Default Certificate Name: auto\_generated\_self\_signed\_cert

The factory default certificate is common to all NWA models. Click Replace to create a certificate using your NWA's MAC address that will be specific to this device.

**My Certificates Setting**

#	Name	Type	Subject	Issuer	Valid From	Valid To
1	auto_generated_self_signed_cert	*SELF	CN=NWA-3500 Factory Default Certificate	CN=NWA-3500 Factory Default Certificate	2000 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT	2030 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 57** My Certificates

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PKI Storage Space in Use	This bar displays the percentage of the ZyXEL Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When you are using 80% or less of the storage space, the bar is green. When the amount of space used is over 80%, the bar is red. When the bar is red, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates.
Replace	This button displays when the ZyXEL Device has the factory default certificate. The factory default certificate is common to all ZyXEL Devices that use certificates. ZyXEL recommends that you use this button to replace the factory default certificate with one that uses your ZyXEL Device's MAC address.
#	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.
Type	<p>This field displays what kind of certificate this is.</p> <p><b>REQ</b> represents a certification request and is not yet a valid certificate. Send a certification request to a certification authority, which then issues a certificate. Use the <b>My Certificate Import</b> screen to import the certificate and replace the request.</p> <p><b>SELF</b> represents a self-signed certificate.</p> <p><b>*SELF</b> represents the default self-signed certificate, which the ZyXEL Device uses to sign imported trusted remote host certificates.</p> <p><b>CERT</b> represents a certificate issued by a certification authority.</p>
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the <b>Subject</b> field.

**Table 57** My Certificates (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Details	<p>Click the details icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate.</p> <p>Click the delete icon to remove the certificate. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate.</p> <p>You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use.</p> <p>Do the following to delete a certificate that shows <b>*SELF</b> in the <b>Type</b> field.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure that no other features, such as HTTPS, VPN, SSH are configured to use the <b>*SELF</b> certificate.</li> <li>2. Click the details icon next to another self-signed certificate (see the description on the <b>Create</b> button if you need to create a self-signed certificate).</li> <li>3. Select the <b>Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates</b> check box.</li> <li>4. Click <b>Apply</b> to save the changes and return to the <b>My Certificates</b> screen.</li> <li>5. The certificate that originally showed <b>*SELF</b> displays <b>SELF</b> and you can delete it now.</li> </ol> <p>Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action</p>
Create	Click <b>Create</b> to go to the screen where you can have the ZyXEL Device generate a certificate or a certification request.
Import	Click <b>Import</b> to open a screen where you can save the certificate that you have enrolled from a certification authority from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete an existing certificate. A window display asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate. Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to display the current validity status of the certificates.

## 14.6 Certificate File Formats

The certification authority certificate that you want to import has to be in one of these file formats:

- Binary X.509: This is an ITU-T recommendation that defines the formats for X.509 certificates.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded X.509: This Privacy Enhanced Mail format uses 64 ASCII characters to convert a binary X.509 certificate into a printable form.
- Binary PKCS#7: This is a standard that defines the general syntax for data (including digital signatures) that may be encrypted. The ZyXEL Device currently allows the importation of a PKCS#7 file that contains a single certificate.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded PKCS#7: This Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format uses 64 ASCII characters to convert a binary PKCS#7 certificate into a printable form.

## 14.7 Importing a Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** and then **Import** to open the **My Certificate Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save an existing certificate to the ZyXEL Device.



You can import only a certificate that matches a corresponding certification request that was generated by the ZyXEL Device.



The certificate you import replaces the corresponding request in the **My Certificates** screen.



You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import it.

**Figure 98** My Certificate Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 58** My Certificate Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click <b>Browse</b> to find it.
Browse	Click <b>Browse</b> to find the certificate file you want to upload.

**Table 58** My Certificate Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the certificate on the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to quit and return to the <b>My Certificates</b> screen.

## 14.8 Creating a Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** and then **Create** to open the **My Certificate Create** screen. Use this screen to have the ZyXEL Device create a self-signed certificate, enroll a certificate with a certification authority or generate a certification request, see the following figure.

**Figure 99** My Certificate Create

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 59** My Certificate Create

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Name	Type up to 31 ASCII characters (not including spaces) to identify this certificate.
Subject Information	Use these fields to record information that identifies the owner of the certificate. You do not have to fill in every field, although the <b>Common Name</b> is mandatory. The certification authority may add fields (such as a serial number) to the subject information when it issues a certificate. It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.

**Table 59** My Certificate Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Common Name	Select a radio button to identify the certificate's owner by IP address, domain name or e-mail address. Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation), domain name or e-mail address in the field provided. The domain name or e-mail address can be up to 31 ASCII characters. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
Organizational Unit	Type up to 127 characters to identify the organizational unit or department to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Organization	Type up to 127 characters to identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Country	Type up to 127 characters to identify the nation where the certificate owner is located. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Key Length	Select a number from the drop-down list box to determine how many bits the key should use (512 to 2048). The longer the key, the more secure it is. A longer key also uses more PKI storage space.
Enrollment Options	These radio buttons deal with how and when the certificate is to be generated.
Create a self-signed certificate	Select <b>Create a self-signed certificate</b> to have the ZyXEL Device generate the certificate and act as the Certification Authority (CA) itself. This way you do not need to apply to a certification authority for certificates.
Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment	Select <b>Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment</b> to have the ZyXEL Device generate and store a request for a certificate. Use the <b>My Certificate Details</b> screen to view the certification request and copy it to send to the certification authority. Copy the certification request from the <b>My Certificate Details</b> screen ( <a href="#">Section 14.9 on page 165</a> ) and then send it to the certification authority.
Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online	Select <b>Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online</b> to have the ZyXEL Device generate a request for a certificate and apply to a certification authority for a certificate. You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the <b>Trusted CAs</b> screen. When you select this option, you must select the certification authority's enrollment protocol and the certification authority's certificate from the drop-down list boxes and enter the certification authority's server address. You also need to fill in the <b>Reference Number</b> and <b>Key</b> if the certification authority requires them.
Enrollment Protocol	Select the certification authority's enrollment protocol from the drop-down list box. <b>Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)</b> is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by VeriSign and Cisco. <b>Certificate Management Protocol (CMP)</b> is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by the Public Key Infrastructure X.509 working group of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) and is specified in RFC 2510.
CA Server Address	Enter the IP address (or URL) of the certification authority server.
CA Certificate	Select the certification authority's certificate from the <b>CA Certificate</b> drop-down list box. You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the <b>Trusted CAs</b> screen. Click <b>Trusted CAs</b> to go to the <b>Trusted CAs</b> screen where you can view (and manage) the ZyXEL Device's list of certificates of trusted certification authorities.



**Table 59** My Certificate Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Request Authentication	When you select <b>Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online</b> , the certification authority may want you to include a reference number and key to identify you when you send a certification request. Fill in both the <b>Reference Number</b> and the <b>Key</b> fields if your certification authority uses CMP enrollment protocol. Just fill in the <b>Key</b> field if your certification authority uses the SECP enrollment protocol.
Key	Type the key that the certification authority gave you.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to begin certificate or certification request generation.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to quit and return to the <b>My Certificates</b> screen.

After you click **Apply** in the **My Certificate Create** screen, you see a screen that tells you the ZyXEL Device is generating the self-signed certificate or certification request.

After the ZyXEL Device successfully enrolls a certificate or generates a certification request or a self-signed certificate, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **My Certificates** screen.

If you configured the **My Certificate Create** screen to have the ZyXEL Device enroll a certificate and the certificate enrollment is not successful, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **My Certificate Create** screen. Click **Return** and check your information in the **My Certificate Create** screen. Make sure that the certification authority information is correct and that your Internet connection is working properly if you want the ZyXEL Device to enroll a certificate online.

## 14.9 My Certificate Details

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** to open the **My Certificates** screen ([Figure 97 on page 160](#)). Click the details button to open the **My Certificate Details** screen. You can use this screen to view in-depth certificate information and change the certificate's name. In the case of a self-signed certificate, you can set it to be the one that the ZyXEL Device uses to sign the trusted remote host certificates that you import to the ZyXEL Device.

**Figure 100** My Certificate Details

**Name** auto\_generated\_self\_signed\_cert

**Property**  
☒ Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates.

**Certificate Path**

Searching...

Refresh

**Certificate Information**

<b>Type</b>	Self-signed X.509 Certificate
<b>Version</b>	V3
<b>Serial Number</b>	946685120
<b>Subject</b>	CN=NWA-3160 0019CB000001
<b>Issuer</b>	CN=NWA-3160 0019CB000001
<b>Signature Algorithm</b>	rsa-pkcs1-sha1
<b>Valid From</b>	2000 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT
<b>Valid To</b>	2030 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT
<b>Key Algorithm</b>	rsaEncryption (512 bits)
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	EMAIL=0019CB000001@auto.gen.cert
<b>Key Usage</b>	DigitalSignature, KeyEncipherment, KeyCertSign
<b>Basic Constraint</b>	Subject Type=CA, Path Length Constraint=1
<b>MD5 Fingerprint</b>	2b:d5:da:d5:cf:ae:b7:96:06:72:c2:24:0c:49:e0:2d
<b>SHA1 Fingerprint</b>	af:f6:db:ac:fe:ab:13:d1:43:24:bf:4f:43:e2:4d:4f:d7:f2:18:aa

**Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format**

```
eUFJU1BHLTEwMDBQIEZhY3RvcnkgRGVmYXVsdCBDZXJ0aWZpY2FOZTAeFwOwMDAx
MDEwMDAwMDBaFw0zMDAxMDEwMDAwMDEwMDAwMDQxMjAwBgNVBAMTKVp5QU1SEctMTAw
MFAgRmFjdG9yeSBFZWZhdWx0IENlcjZmljYXR1MFwwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQAD
SwAwSAJBANB1YebOCBx9tjUjVL2VoIFv1WBrQM613TF1WQoHKQtSFywWdFNnXX5L
qXfX1YHFgoO8Mn6cJGUGhd5pWau8MCAwEAAN7MHkwDgYDVROPAQEABAQDAgKk
MCAGAlUdEQQZMBEwFwZhY3RvcnkgRGVmYXVsdDAsBgNVHRMBAQAECDAG
AQH/AgEBMDEGA1UdJQQqMCgGCCsGAQUFCAICBggrBgEFBQcDAQYIKwYBBQUHAgQG
CCsGAQUFBwMCAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAAOEAK/6Za1/UjL+WZk1E+h6UmGJYT/gG
DOyeDwtMQzydO2Rn3dDLGI9QJtZwJrD8njPGv3oR7AZrcw1T2VQkA9FA9g==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Export Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 60** My Certificate Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. If you want to change the name, type up to 31 characters to identify this certificate. You may use any character (not including spaces).
Property Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates.	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device use this certificate to sign the trusted remote host certificates that you import to the ZyXEL Device. This check box is only available with self-signed certificates.  If this check box is already selected, you cannot clear it in this screen, you must select this check box in another self-signed certificate's details screen. This automatically clears the check box in the details screen of the certificate that was previously set to sign the imported trusted remote host certificates.

**Table 60** My Certificate Details (continued)

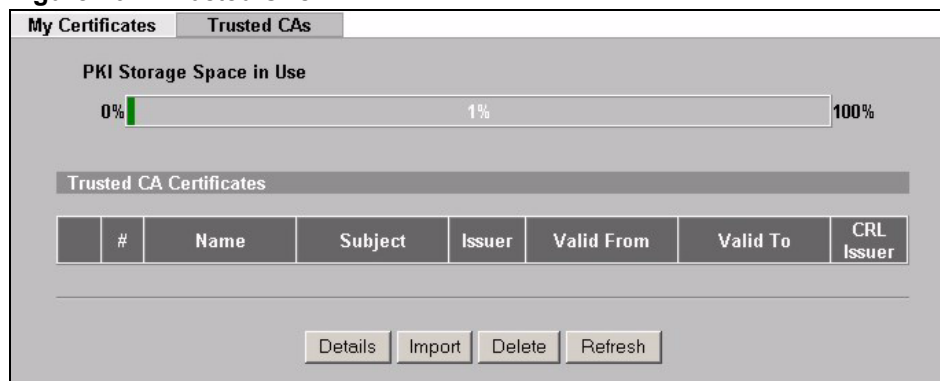
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Path	Click the <b>Refresh</b> button to have this read-only text box display the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the certificate (and the certificate itself). If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the certificate itself). If the certificate is a self-signed certificate, the certificate itself is the only one in the list. The ZyXEL Device does not trust the certificate and displays “Not trusted” in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to display the certification path.
Certificate Information	These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate’s owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). “X.509” means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates.
Version	This field displays the X.509 version number.
Serial Number	This field displays the certificate’s identification number given by the certification authority or generated by the ZyXEL Device.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate’s issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same as the <b>Subject Name</b> field.
Signature Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. The ZyXEL Device uses rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Some certification authorities may use ras-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm).
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Key Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate’s key pair (the ZyXEL Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example).
Subject Alternative Name	This field displays the certificate owner’s IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL).
Key Usage	This field displays for what functions the certificate’s key can be used. For example, “DigitalSignature” means that the key can be used to sign certificates and “KeyEncipherment” means that the key can be used to encrypt text.
Basic Constraint	This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority’s certificate and “Path Length Constraint=1” means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate’s path.
MD5 Fingerprint	This is the certificate’s message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm.

**Table 60** My Certificate Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SHA1 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm.
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	<p>This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses 64 ASCII characters to convert the binary certificate into a printable form.</p> <p>You can copy and paste a certification request into a certification authority's web page, an e-mail that you send to the certification authority or a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later manual enrollment.</p> <p>You can copy and paste a certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste a certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).</p>
Export	Click this button and then <b>Save</b> in the <b>File Download</b> screen. The <b>Save As</b> screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click <b>Save</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes. You can only change the name, except in the case of a self-signed certificate, which you can also set to be the default self-signed certificate that signs the imported trusted remote host certificates.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to quit and return to the <b>My Certificates</b> screen.

## 14.10 Trusted CAs

Click **CERTIFICATES > Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen. This screen displays a summary list of certificates of the certification authorities that you have set the ZyXEL Device to accept as trusted. The ZyXEL Device accepts any valid certificate signed by a certification authority on this list as being trustworthy; thus you do not need to import any certificate that is signed by one of these certification authorities. See the following figure.

**Figure 101** Trusted CAs

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 61** Trusted CAs

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PKI Storage Space in Use	This bar displays the percentage of the ZyXEL Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When you are using 80% or less of the storage space, the bar is green. When the amount of space used is over 80%, the bar is red. When the bar is red, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates.
#	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate.
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the <b>Subject</b> field.
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
CRL Issuer	This field displays Yes if the certification authority issues Certificate Revocation Lists for the certificates that it has issued and you have selected the <b>Issues certificate revocation lists (CRL)</b> check box in the certificate's details screen to have the ZyXEL Device check the CRL before trusting any certificates issued by the certification authority. Otherwise the field displays "No".
Details	Click <b>Details</b> to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check a certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.
Import	Click <b>Import</b> to open a screen where you can save the certificate of a certification authority that you trust, from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete an existing certificate. A window display asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate. Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action.
Refresh	Click this button to display the current validity status of the certificates.

## 14.11 Importing a Trusted CA's Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES >Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen and then click **Import** to open the **Trusted CA Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save a trusted certification authority's certificate to the ZyXEL Device, see the following figure.



**You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import the certificate.**

**Figure 102** Trusted CA Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 62** Trusted CA Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click <b>Browse</b> to find it.
Browse	Click <b>Browse</b> to find the certificate file you want to upload.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the certificate on the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to quit and return to the <b>Trusted CAs</b> screen.

## 14.12 Trusted CA Certificate Details

Click **CERTIFICATES > Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen. Click the details icon to open the **Trusted CA Details** screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check a certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.

Name:	VeriSign.cer
Property	<input type="checkbox"/> Check incoming certificates issued by this CA against a CRL
Certificate Path	
<div>Searching...</div> <div>Refresh</div>	
Certificate Information	
Type	Self-signed X.509 Certificate
Version	V1
Serial Number	3558802160848854062232407011527417280
Subject	OU=Secure Server Certification Authority, O=RSA Data Security\, Inc., C=US
Issuer	OU=Secure Server Certification Authority, O=RSA Data Security\, Inc., C=US
Signature Algorithm	rsa-pkcs1-md2
Valid From	1994 Nov 9th, 00:00:00 GMT
Valid To	2010 Jan 7th, 23:59:59 GMT
Key Algorithm	rsaEncryption (1000 bits)
MD5 Fingerprint	74:7b:82:03:43:f0:00:9e:6b:b3:ec:47:bf:85:a5:93
SHA1 Fingerprint	44:63:c5:31:d7:cc:c1:00:67:94:61:2b:b6:56:d3:bf:62:57:84:6f
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	
<div>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIICNDCCAaECEARtZn5ORf5eV288mB1e3cAwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQECBQAwXzELMAkG A1UEBhMCVVMxIDAeBgNVBAAoTF1JTQSBYYXRhIFN1Y3VyaXR5L0CBJmMuMS4wL0YD VQQLYyVTZW1ncmUgU2VydWVyaW1lcnRpZml1YXRpb24gQXV0aG9yaXR5MB4XDTE0 MTEwOTAwMDAwMFAoXDTEwMDEwNzEzNTk1OVowXzELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxIDAeBgNV BAAoTF1JTQSBYYXRhIFN1Y3VyaXR5L0CBJmMuMS4wL0YDVoQLLEyVTZW1ncmUgU2V ydWVyaW1lcnRpZml1YXRpb24gQXV0aG9yaXR5MIGbMAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBAAQAAAGJ ADCBhQJ+AJLoesGugz5aqomDV6w1AXYMr6OLDfO6zV4ZFQDSYRAUcm/jwjiioII OhaGN1XpsSECrX2ogZoFokvJSyVm1lZsiaP94FZbYQHZZXATcXY+m3dM41CJVphI uR2nKR0TLkoR0ZweFdvJVCxzOmmCsZc5nG1wZ0j13S3WyB57AgMBAAEwDQYJKoZI -----END CERTIFICATE-----</div> <div>Export</div> <div>Apply</div> <div>Cancel</div>	

### Table 63 Trusted CA Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. If you want to change the name, type up to 31 characters to identify this key certificate. You may use any character (not including spaces).
Property Check incoming certificates issued by this CA against a CRL	<p>Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device check incoming certificates that are issued by this certification authority against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL).</p> <p>Clear this check box to have the ZyXEL Device not check incoming certificates that are issued by this certification authority against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL).</p>
Certificate Path	Click the <b>Refresh</b> button to have this read-only text box display the end entity's certificate and a list of certification authority certificates that shows the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the end entity's certificate. If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the end entity's own certificate). The ZyXEL Device does not trust the end entity's certificate and displays "Not trusted" in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to display the certification path.

**Table 63** Trusted CA Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Information	These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate's owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). X.509 means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates.
Version	This field displays the X.509 version number.
Serial Number	This field displays the certificate's identification number given by the certification authority.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the <b>Subject Name</b> field.
Signature Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. Some certification authorities use rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Other certification authorities may use ras-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm).
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Key Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate's key pair (the ZyXEL Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example).
Subject Alternative Name	This field displays the certificate's owner's IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL).
Key Usage	This field displays for what functions the certificate's key can be used. For example, "DigitalSignature" means that the key can be used to sign certificates and "KeyEncipherment" means that the key can be used to encrypt text.
Basic Constraint	This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority's certificate and "Path Length Constraint=1" means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate's path.
CRL Distribution Points	This field displays how many directory servers with Lists of revoked certificates the issuing certification authority of this certificate makes available. This field also displays the domain names or IP addresses of the servers.
MD5 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm. You cannot use this value to verify that this is the remote host's actual certificate because the ZyXEL Device has signed the certificate; thus causing this value to be different from that of the remote host's actual certificate. See <a href="#">Section 14.3 on page 158</a> for how to verify a remote host's certificate before you import it into the ZyXEL Device.



**Table 63** Trusted CA Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SHA1 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm. You cannot use this value to verify that this is the remote host's actual certificate because the ZyXEL Device has signed the certificate; thus causing this value to be different from that of the remote host's actual certificate. See <a href="#">Section 14.3 on page 158</a> for how to verify a remote host's certificate before you import it into the ZyXEL Device.
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses 64 ASCII characters to convert the binary certificate into a printable form.  You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).
Export	Click this button and then <b>Save</b> in the <b>File Download</b> screen. The <b>Save As</b> screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click <b>Save</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes. You can only change the name and/or set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check the CRL that the certification authority issues before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to quit and return to the <b>Trusted CAs</b> screen.



# Log Screens

This chapter contains information about configuring general log settings and viewing the ZyXEL Device's logs.

## 15.1 Configuring View Log

The web configurator allows you to look at all of the ZyXEL Device's logs in one location.

Click **LOGS > View Log**. Use the **View Log** screen to see the logs for the categories that you selected in the **Log Settings** screen (see [Figure 105 on page 176](#)). Options include logs about system maintenance, system errors and access control.

You can view logs and alert messages in this page. Once the log entries are all used, the log will wrap around and the old logs will be deleted.

Click a column heading to sort the entries. A triangle indicates the direction of the sort order.

**Figure 104** View Log

#	Time ▲	Message	Source	Destination	Notes
1	01/01/2000 01:00:10	WLAN STA Association			MACAddr:001302171185
2	01/01/2000 00:27:26	Successful HTTP login	172.23.37.27		User:admin

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 64** View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Display	Select a log category from the drop down list box to display logs within the selected category. To view all logs, select <b>All Logs</b> . The number of categories shown in the drop down list box depends on the selection in the <b>Log Settings</b> page.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Message	This field states the reason for the log.
Source	This field lists the source IP address and the port number of the incoming packet.
Destination	This field lists the destination IP address and the port number of the incoming packet.

**Table 64** View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Notes	This field displays additional information about the log entry.
Email Log Now	Click <b>Email Log Now</b> to send the log screen to the e-mail address specified in the <b>Log Settings</b> page.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to renew the log screen.
Clear Log	Click <b>Clear Log</b> to clear all the logs.

## 15.2 Configuring Log Settings

To change your ZyXEL Device's log settings, click **LOGS > Log Settings**. The screen appears as shown.

Use the **Log Settings** screen to configure to where and when the ZyXEL Device is to send the logs and which logs and/or immediate alerts it is to send.

An alert is a type of log that warrants more serious attention. Some categories such as **System Errors** consist of both logs and alerts. You may differentiate them by their color in the **View Log** screen. Alerts are displayed in red and logs are displayed in black.

**Figure 105** Log Settings

**View Log** **Log Settings**

**Address Info:**

Mail Server:  (Outgoing SMTP Server NAME or IP Address)

Mail Subject:

Send log to:  (E-Mail Address)

Send alerts to:  (E-Mail Address)

☐ SMTP Authentication

User NAME:

Password:

**Syslog Logging:**

☐ Active

Syslog IP Address:  (Server NAME or IP Address)

Log Facility:

**Send Log:**

Log Schedule:

Day for Sending Log:

Time for Sending Log:  (hour)  (minute)

☐ Clear log after sending mail

**Log**

☒ System Maintenance

☒ System Errors

☒ PKI

☒ SSL/TLS

☒ 802.1x

☒ Wireless

☒ Internal RADIUS Server

☒ Rogue AP Detection

**Send immediate alert**

☒ System Errors

☒ PKI

☒ Rogue AP Detection

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 65** Log Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Address Info	
Mail Server	Enter the server name or the IP address of the mail server for the e-mail addresses specified below. If this field is left blank, logs and alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the log e-mail message that the ZyXEL Device sends.
Send Log to	Logs are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, logs will not be sent via e-mail.
Send Alerts to	Enter the e-mail address where the alert messages will be sent. If this field is left blank, alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
SMTP Authentication	If you use SMTP authentication, the mail receiver should be the owner of the SMTP account.
User NAME	If your e-mail account requires SMTP authentication, enter the username here.
Password	Enter the password associated with the above username.
Syslog Logging	Syslog logging sends a log to an external syslog server used to store logs.
Active	Click <b>Active</b> to enable syslog logging.
Syslog Server IP Address	Enter the server name or IP address of the syslog server that will log the selected categories of logs.
Log Facility	Select a location from the drop down list box. The log facility allows you to log the messages to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Send Log	
Log Schedule	<p>This drop-down menu is used to configure the frequency of log messages being sent as E-mail:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Hourly</li> <li>• When Log is Full</li> <li>• None.</li> </ul> <p>If the <b>Weekly</b> or the <b>Daily</b> option is selected, specify a time of day when the E-mail should be sent. If the <b>Weekly</b> option is selected, then also specify which day of the week the E-mail should be sent. If the <b>When Log is Full</b> option is selected, an alert is sent when the log fills up. If you select <b>None</b>, no log messages are sent.</p>
Day for Sending Log	This field is only available when you select <b>Weekly</b> in the <b>Log Schedule</b> field. Use the drop down list box to select which day of the week to send the logs.
Time for Sending Log	Enter the time of the day in 24-hour format (for example 23:00 equals 11:00 pm) to send the logs.
Clear log after sending mail	Select the check box to clear all logs after logs and alert messages are sent via e-mail.
Log	Select the categories of logs that you want to record.
Send Immediate Alert	Select the categories of alerts for which you want the ZyXEL Device to immediately send e-mail alerts.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to reconfigure all the fields in this screen.

## 15.3 Example Log Messages

This section provides descriptions of some example log messages.

**Table 66** System Maintenance Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Time calibration is successful	The router has adjusted its time based on information from the time server.
Time calibration failed	The router failed to get information from the time server.
DHCP client gets %s	A DHCP client got a new IP address from the DHCP server.
DHCP client IP expired	A DHCP client's IP address has expired.
DHCP server assigns %s	The DHCP server assigned an IP address to a client.
SMT Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router's SMT interface.
SMT Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router's SMT interface.
WEB Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router's web configurator interface.
WEB Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router's web configurator interface.
TELNET Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via telnet.
TELNET Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via telnet.
FTP Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via FTP.
FTP Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via FTP.

**Table 67** ICMP Notes

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
0		Echo Reply
	0	Echo reply message
3		Destination Unreachable
	0	Net unreachable
	1	Host unreachable
	2	Protocol unreachable
	3	Port unreachable
	4	A packet that needed fragmentation was dropped because it was set to Don't Fragment (DF)
	5	Source route failed
4		Source Quench
	0	A gateway may discard internet datagrams if it does not have the buffer space needed to queue the datagrams for output to the next network on the route to the destination network.
5		Redirect
	0	Redirect datagrams for the Network
	1	Redirect datagrams for the Host
	2	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Network
	3	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Host

**Table 67** ICMP Notes (continued)

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
8		Echo
	0	Echo message
11		Time Exceeded
	0	Time to live exceeded in transit
	1	Fragment reassembly time exceeded
12		Parameter Problem
	0	Pointer indicates the error
13		Timestamp
	0	Timestamp request message
14		Timestamp Reply
	0	Timestamp reply message
15		Information Request
	0	Information request message
16		Information Reply
	0	Information reply message

**Table 68** Sys log

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Mon dd hr:mm:ss hostname src="<srcIP:srcPort>" dst="<dstIP:dstPort>" msg="<msg>" note="<note>"	This message is sent by the "RAS" when this syslog is generated. The messages and notes are defined in this appendix's other charts.

## 15.4 Log Commands

Go to the command interpreter interface (the Command Interpreter appendix explains how to access and use the commands).

### 15.4.1 Configuring What You Want the ZyXEL Device to Log

Use the `sys logs load` command to load the log setting buffer that allows you to configure which logs the ZyXEL Device is to record.

Use `sys logs category` followed by a log category and a parameter to decide what to record

**Table 69** Log Categories and Available Settings

LOG CATEGORIES	AVAILABLE PARAMETERS
error	0, 1, 2, 3
mten	0, 1
Use 0 to not record logs for that category, 1 to record only logs for that category, 2 to record only alerts for that category, and 3 to record both logs and alerts for that category.	

Use the `sys logs save` command to store the settings in the ZyXEL Device (you must do this in order to record logs).

## 15.4.2 Displaying Logs

Use the `sys logs display` command to show all of the logs in the ZyXEL Device's log.

Use the `sys logs category display` command to show the log settings for all of the log categories.

Use the `sys logs display [log category]` command to show the logs in an individual ZyXEL Device log category.

Use the `sys logs clear` command to erase all of the ZyXEL Device's logs.

## 15.5 Log Command Example

This example shows how to set the ZyXEL Device to record the error logs and alerts and then view the results.

```
ras> sys logs load
ras> sys logs category error 3
ras> sys logs save
ras> sys logs display access
```

#.	time	source	destination	notes	message
0	11/11/2002 15:10:12	172.22.3.80:137	172.22.255.255:137	ACCESS	BLOCK



This chapter discusses how to configure VLAN on the ZyXEL Device.

## 16.1 VLAN

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network can belong to one or more groups. Only stations within the same group can talk to each other.

### 16.1.1 Management VLAN ID

The Management VLAN ID identifies the “management VLAN”. A device must be a member of this “management VLAN” in order to access and manage the ZyXEL Device. If a device is not a member of this VLAN, then that device cannot manage the ZyXEL Device.



---

**If no devices are in the management VLAN, then you will be able to access the ZyXEL Device only through the console port (not through the network).**

---

### 16.1.2 VLAN Tagging

The ZyXEL Device supports IEEE 802.1q VLAN tagging. Tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header of a frame to identify VLAN membership. The ZyXEL Device can identify VLAN tags for incoming Ethernet frames and add VLAN tags to outgoing Ethernet frames.



---

**You must connect the ZyXEL Device to a VLAN-aware device that is a member of the management VLAN in order to perform management. See the Configuring Management VLAN example BEFORE you configure the VLAN screens.**

---

## 16.2 Configuring VLAN

The ZyXEL Device allows you to configure VLAN based on SSID profile (wireless VLAN), and / or based on your RADIUS server (RADIUS VLAN).

- When you use wireless VLAN, the ZyXEL Device tags all packets from an SSID with the VLAN ID you set in the **Wireless VLAN** screen.
- When you use RADIUS VLAN, your RADIUS server assigns VLAN IDs to a user or user group's traffic based on the configuration in the **RADIUS VLAN** screen.
- When you use wireless VLAN and RADIUS VLAN together, the ZyXEL Device first tries to assign VLAN IDs based on RADIUS VLAN configuration. If a client's user name does not match an entry in the **RADIUS VLAN** screen, the ZyXEL Device assigns a VLAN ID based on the settings in the **Wireless VLAN** screen. See [Section 16.2.4 on page 188](#) for more information.



---

**To use RADIUS VLAN, you must first select Enable VIRTUAL LAN and configure the Management VLAN ID in the VLAN > WIRELESS VLAN screen.**

---

### 16.2.1 Wireless VLAN

Click **VLAN > WIRELESS VLAN**. The following screen appears.

Figure 106 WIRELESS VLAN

WIRELESS VLAN

RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

☐ Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID

1

(1 ~ 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	<div>1</div>	<div>0</div>
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	<div>2</div>	<div>0</div>
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	<div>3</div>	<div>0</div>
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	<div>4</div>	<div>0</div>
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	<div>5</div>	<div>0</div>
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	<div>6</div>	<div>0</div>
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	<div>7</div>	<div>0</div>
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	<div>8</div>	<div>0</div>
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	<div>9</div>	<div>0</div>
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	<div>10</div>	<div>0</div>
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	<div>11</div>	<div>0</div>
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	<div>12</div>	<div>0</div>
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	<div>13</div>	<div>0</div>
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	<div>14</div>	<div>0</div>
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	<div>15</div>	<div>0</div>
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	<div>16</div>	<div>0</div>

Apply

Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen

Table 70 WIRELESS VLAN

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Enable VIRTUAL LAN	Select this box to enable VLAN tagging.
Management VLAN ID	<div>Enter a number from 1 to 4094 to define this VLAN group. At least one device in your network must belong to this VLAN group in order to manage the ZyXEL Device.</div> <div><b>Note: Mail and FTP servers must have the same management VLAN ID to communicate with the ZyXEL Device.</b></div> <div>See <a href="#">Section 16.2.3 on page 185</a> for more information.</div>
VLAN Mapping Table	Use this table to have the ZyXEL Device assign VLAN tags to packets from wireless clients based on the SSID they use to connect to the ZyXEL Device.
Index	This is the index number of the SSID profile.
Name	This is the name of the SSID profile.
SSID	This is the SSID the profile uses.

**Table 70** WIRELESS VLAN

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID number from 1 to 4094. Packets coming from the WLAN using this SSID profile are tagged with the VLAN ID number by the ZyXEL Device. Different SSID profiles can use the same or different VLAN IDs. This allows you to split wireless stations into groups using similar VLAN IDs.
Second Rx VLAN ID	Enter a number from 1 to 4094, but different from the <b>VLAN ID</b> . Traffic received from the LAN that is tagged with this VLAN ID is sent to all SSIDs with this VLAN ID configured in the <b>VLAN ID</b> or <b>Second Rx VLAN ID</b> fields. See <a href="#">Section 16.2.5 on page 196</a> for more information.
Apply	Click this to save your changes to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to return this screen to its last-saved settings.

## 16.2.2 RADIUS VLAN

Click **VLAN > RADIUS VLAN**. The following screen appears.

**Figure 107** RADIUS VLAN

Wireless VLAN RADIUS VLAN

**RADIUS VIRTUAL LAN Setup**

☐ Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN name error!

**VLAN Mapping Table**

	Index	ID	Name
	1	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	2	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	3	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	4	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	5	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	6	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	7	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	8	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	9	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	10	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	11	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	12	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	13	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	14	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	15	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	16	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 71** RADIUS VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN name error!	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device forbid access to wireless clients when the VLAN attributes sent from the RADIUS server do not match a configured <b>Name</b> field. When you select this check box, only users with names configured in this screen can access the network through the ZyXEL Device.
VLAN Mapping Table	Use this table to map names to VLAN IDs so that the RADIUS server can assign each user or user group a mapped VLAN ID. See your RADIUS server documentation for more information on configuring VLAN ID attributes. See <a href="#">Section 16.2.4 on page 188</a> for more information.
Index	Select a check box to enable the VLAN mapping profile.
ID	Type a VLAN ID. Incoming traffic from the WLAN is authorized and assigned a VLAN ID before it is sent to the LAN.
Name	Type a name to have the ZyXEL Device check for specific VLAN attributes on incoming messages from the RADIUS server. Access-accept packets sent by the RADIUS server contain VLAN related attributes. The configured <b>Name</b> fields are checked against these attributes. If a configured <b>Name</b> field matches these attributes, the corresponding VLAN ID is added to packets sent from this user to the LAN. If the VLAN-related attributes sent by the RADIUS server do not match a configured <b>Name</b> field, a wireless station is assigned the wireless VLAN ID associated with its SSID (unless the <b>Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN error!</b> check box is selected).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click <b>Reset</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 16.2.3 Configuring Management VLAN Example

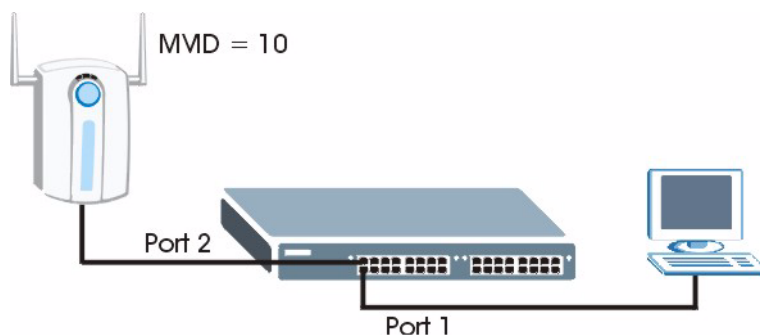
This section shows you how to create a VLAN on an Ethernet switch.

By default, the port on the ZyXEL Device is a member of the management VLAN (VLAN ID 1). The following procedure shows you how to configure a tagged VLAN.



**Use the out-of-band management port or console port to configure the switch if you misconfigure the management VLAN and lock yourself out from performing in-band management.**

On an Ethernet switch, create a VLAN that has the same management VLAN ID as the ZyXEL Device. The following figure has the ZyXEL Device connected to port 2 of the switch and your computer connected to port 1. The management VLAN ID is ten.

**Figure 108** Management VLAN Configuration Example

Perform the following steps in the switch web configurator:

- 1 Click **VLAN** under **Advanced Application**.
- 2 Click **Static VLAN**.
- 3 Select the **ACTIVE** check box.
- 4 Type a **Name** for the VLAN ID.
- 5 Type a **VLAN Group ID**. This should be the same as the management VLAN ID on the ZyXEL Device.
- 6 Enable **Tx Tagging** on the port which you want to connect to the ZyXEL Device.  
Disable **Tx Tagging** on the port you are using to connect to your computer.
- 7 Under **Control**, select **Fixed** to set the port as a member of the VLAN.

**Figure 109** VLAN-Aware Switch - Static VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Static VLAN' configuration page. The 'ACTIVE' checkbox is checked. The 'Name' field contains 'MD1' and the 'VLAN Group ID' field contains '10'. Below these fields is a table for port configuration:

Port	Control			Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click **Apply**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 110** VLAN-Aware Switch

VID	Active	Name	Delete
10	Yes	VID1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Yes	2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Yes	3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Yes	VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Yes	cth-test	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 9 Click **VLAN Status** to display the following screen.

**Figure 111** VLAN-Aware Switch - VLAN Status

Index	VID	Port Number	Elapsed Time	Status
1	10	2: T, 4: U, 6: -, 8: -, 10: T, 12: U, 14: -, 16: -, 18: -, 20: -, 22: -, 24: -, 26: -, S2: -	0:08:28	Static
2	2	2: -, 4: U, 6: -, 8: -, 10: -, 12: -, 14: -, 16: -, 18: -, 20: -, 22: -, 24: -, 26: -, S2: -	0:08:28	Static
3	3	2: T, 4: U, 6: -, 8: -, 10: -, 12: -, 14: -, 16: -, 18: -, 20: -, 22: -, 24: -, 26: -, S2: -	0:08:28	Static
4	4	2: -, 4: -, 6: -, 8: -, 10: U, 12: -, 14: -, 16: -, 18: -, 20: -, 22: -, 24: -, 26: -, S2: -	0:08:27	Static
5	5	2: -, 4: -, 6: -, 8: -, 10: -, 12: -, 14: U, 16: -, 18: -, 20: -, 22: -, 24: -, 26: -, S2: -	0:08:27	Static

Follow the instructions in the Quick Start Guide to set up your ZyXEL Device for configuration. The ZyXEL Device should be connected to the VLAN-aware switch. In the above example, the switch is using port 1 to connect to your computer and port 2 to connect to the ZyXEL Device: [Figure 108 on page 186](#).

- 1 In the ZyXEL Device web configurator click **VLAN** to open the VLAN setup screen.
- 2 Select the **Enable VLAN Tagging** check box and type a **Management VLAN ID** (10 in this example) in the field provided.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

**Figure 112** VLAN Setup

**WIRELESS VLAN** **RADIUS VLAN**

**VIRTUAL LAN Setup**

☒ **Enable VIRTUAL LAN**

**Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup**

**Management VLAN ID**  (1 ~ 4094)

**VLAN Mapping Table**

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	1	0
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	2	0
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	3	0
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	4	0
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	5	0
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	6	0
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	7	0
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	8	0
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	9	0
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	10	0
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	11	0
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	12	0
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	13	0
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	14	0
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	15	0
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	16	0

**Apply** **Reset**

- 4 The ZyXEL Device attempts to connect with a VLAN-aware device. You can now access and manage the ZyXEL Device through the Ethernet switch.



If you do not connect the ZyXEL Device to a correctly configured VLAN-aware device, you will lock yourself out of the ZyXEL Device. If this happens, you must reset the ZyXEL Device to access it again.

## 16.2.4 Configuring Microsoft's IAS Server Example

Dynamic VLAN assignment can be used with the ZyXEL Device. Dynamic VLAN assignment allows network administrators to assign a specific VLAN (configured on the ZyXEL Device) to an individual's Windows User Account. When a wireless station is successfully authenticated to the network, it is automatically placed into its respective VLAN.

ZyXEL uses the following standard RADIUS attributes returned from Microsoft's IAS RADIUS service to place the wireless station into the correct VLAN:

**Table 72** Standard RADIUS Attributes

ATTRIBUTE NAME	TYPE	VALUE
Tunnel-Type	064	13 (decimal) – VLAN
Tunnel-Medium-Type	065	6 (decimal) – 802
Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	081	<vlan-name> (string) – either the <b>Name</b> you enter in the ZyXEL Device's <b>VLAN &gt; RADIUS VLAN</b> screen or the number. See <a href="#">Figure 124 on page 194</a> .

The following occurs under Dynamic VLAN Assignment:

- 1 When you configure your wireless credentials, the ZyXEL Device sends the information to the IAS server using RADIUS protocol.
- 2 Authentication by the RADIUS server is successful.
- 3 The RADIUS server sends three attributes related to this feature.
- 4 The ZyXEL Device compares these attributes with the VLAN screen mapping table.
  - 4a If the **Name**, for example "VLAN 20" is found, the mapped VLAN ID is used.
  - 4b If the **Name** is not found in the mapping table, the string in the **Tunnel-Private-Group-ID** attribute is considered as a number ID format, for example 2493. The range of the number ID (Name:string) is between 1 and 4094.
  - 4c If a or b are not matched, the ZyXEL Device uses the VLAN ID configured in the **WIRELESS VLAN** screen and the wireless station. This **VLAN ID** is independent and hence different to the **ID** in the VLAN screen.

### 16.2.4.1 Configuring VLAN Groups

To configure a VLAN group you must first define the VLAN Groups on the Active Directory server and assign the user accounts to each VLAN Group.

- 1 Using the Active Directory Users and Computers administrative tool, create the VLAN Groups that will be used for each VLAN ID. One VLAN Group must be created for each VLAN defined on the ZyXEL Device. The VLAN Groups must be created as Global/Security groups.
  - Type a name for the **VLAN Group** that describes the VLAN Group's function.
  - Select the **Global** Group scope parameter check box.
  - Select the **Security** Group type parameter check box.
  - Click **OK**.

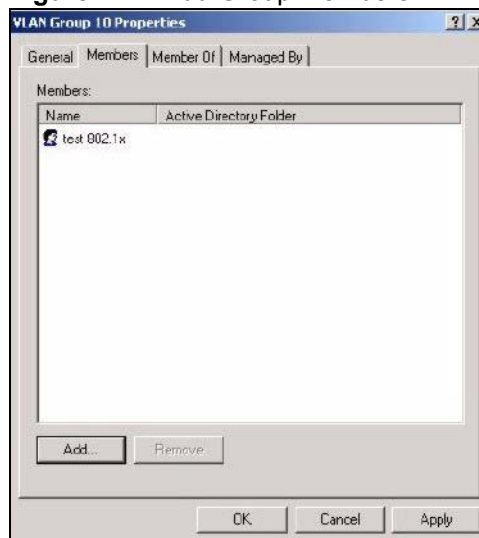


**Figure 113** New Global Security Group

**2** In **VLAN Group ID Properties**, click the **Members** tab.

- The IAS uses group memberships to determine which user accounts belong to which VLAN groups. Click the **Add** button and configure the VLAN group details.

**3** Repeat the previous step to add each VLAN group required.

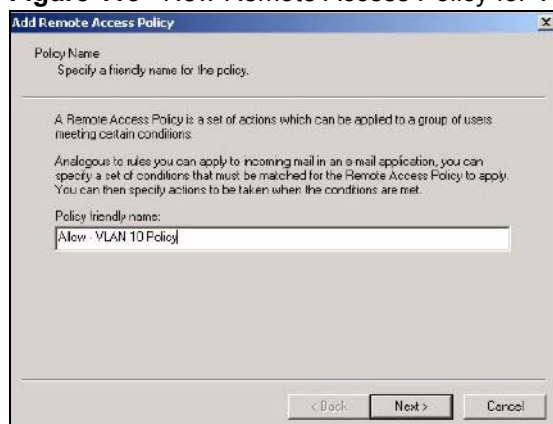
**Figure 114** Add Group Members

#### 16.2.4.2 Configuring Remote Access Policies

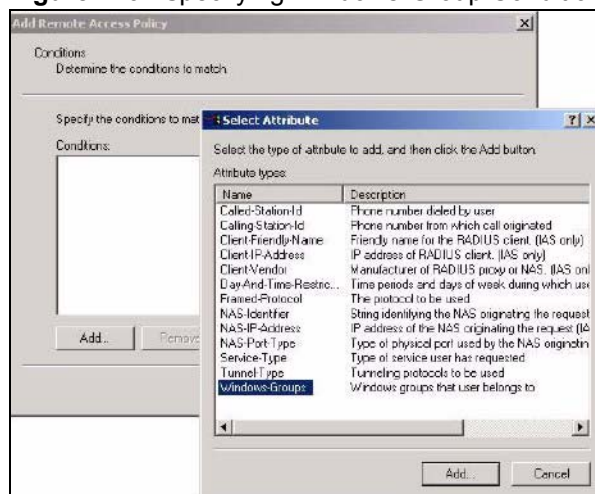
Once the VLAN Groups have been created, the IAS Remote Access Policy needs to be defined. This allows the IAS to compare the user account being authenticated against the group memberships of each VLAN Group.

- 1** Using the **Remote Access Policy** option on the Internet Authentication Service management interface, create a new VLAN Policy for each VLAN Group defined in the previous section. The order of the remote access policies is important. The most specific policies should be placed at the top of the policy list and the most general at the bottom. For example, if the Day-And-Time Restriction policy is still present, it should be moved to the bottom or deleted to allow the VLAN Group policies to take precedence.
  - Right click **Remote Access Policy** and select **New Remote Access Policy**.

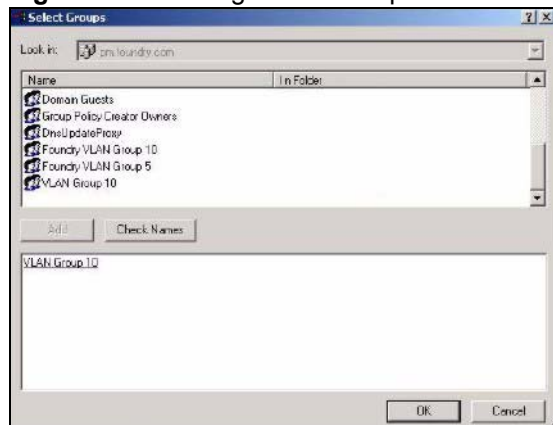
- Enter a **Policy friendly name** that describes the policy. Each Remote Access Policy will be matched to one VLAN Group. An example may be, **Allow - VLAN 10 Policy**.
- Click **Next**.

**Figure 115** New Remote Access Policy for VLAN Group

- 2 The **Conditions** window displays. Select **Add** to add a condition for this policy to act on.
- 3 In the **Select Attribute** screen, click **Windows-Groups** and the **Add** button.

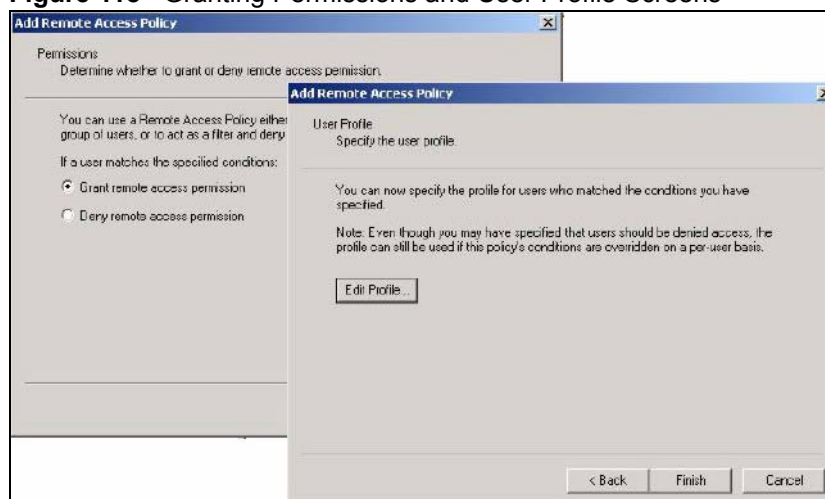
**Figure 116** Specifying Windows-Group Condition

- 4 The **Select Groups** window displays. Select a remote access policy and click the **Add** button. The policy is added to the field below. Only one VLAN Group should be associated with each policy.
- 5 Click **OK** and **Next** in the next few screens to accept the group value.

**Figure 117** Adding VLAN Group

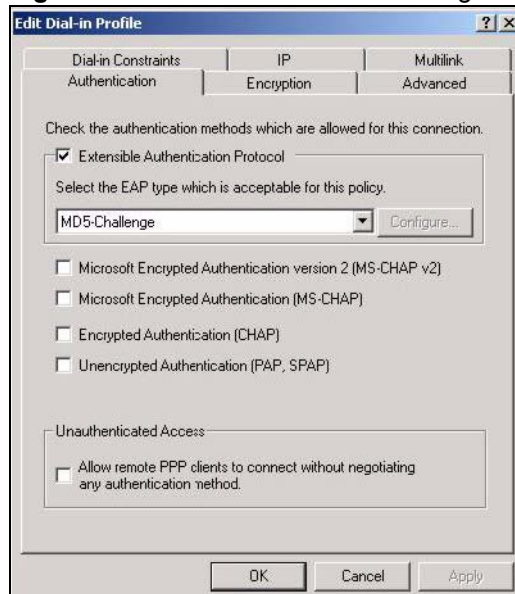
**6** When the **Permissions** options screen displays, select **Grant remote access permission**.

- Click **Next** to grant access based on group membership.
- Click the **Edit Profile** button.

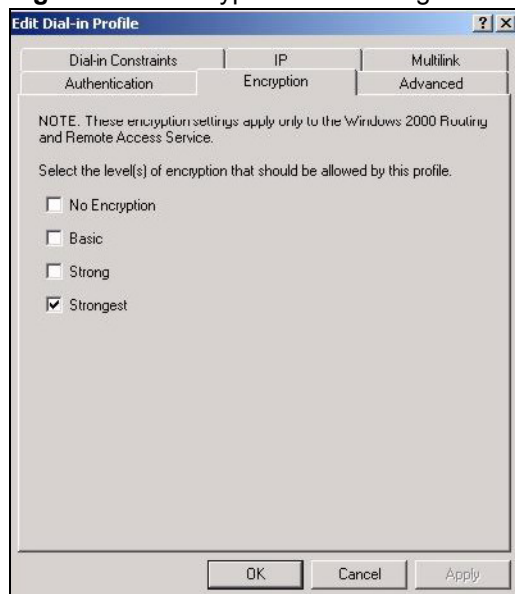
**Figure 118** Granting Permissions and User Profile Screens

**7** The **Edit Dial-in Profile** screen displays. Click the **Authentication** tab and select the **Extensible Authentication Protocol** check box.

- Select an EAP type depending on your authentication needs from the drop-down list box.
- Clear the check boxes for all other authentication types listed below the drop-down list box.

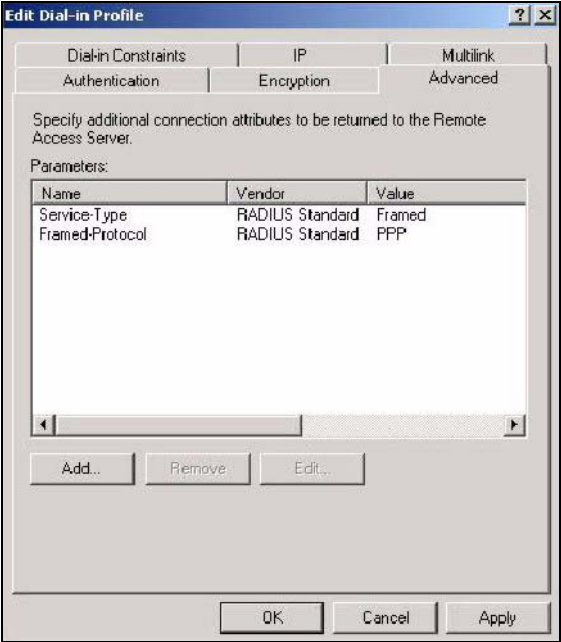
**Figure 119** Authentication Tab Settings

- 8 Click the **Encryption** tab. Select the **Strongest** encryption option. This step is not required for EAP-MD5, but is performed as a safeguard.

**Figure 120** Encryption Tab Settings

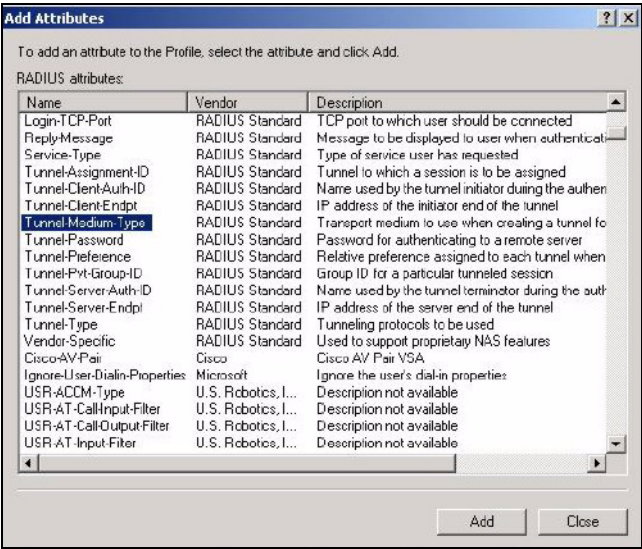
- 9 Click the **IP** tab and select the **Client may request an IP address** check box for DHCP support.
- 10 Click the **Advanced** tab. The current default parameters returned to the ZyXEL Device should be **Service-Type** and **Framed-Protocol**.
- Click the **Add** button to add an additional three RADIUS VLAN attributes required for 802.1X Dynamic VLAN Assignment.

Figure 121 Connection Attributes Screen



- 11 The RADIUS Attribute screen displays. From the list, three RADIUS attributes will be added:
- Tunnel-Medium-Type
  - Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID
  - Tunnel-Type
- Click the **Add** button
  - Select **Tunnel-Medium-Type**
  - Click the **Add** button.

Figure 122 RADIUS Attribute Screen



- 12 The **Enumerable Attribute Information** screen displays. Select the **802** value from the **Attribute value** drop-down list box.
- Click **OK**.

**Figure 123** 802 Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Medium-Type

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Enumerable Attribute Information". It contains the following fields:

- Attribute name: Tunnel-Medium-Type
- Attribute number: 65
- Attribute format: Enumerator
- Attribute value: 802 (includes all 802 media plus Ethernet canonical format) (selected from a dropdown menu)

At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

**13** Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 122 on page 193](#).

- Select **Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID**.
- Click **Add**.

**14** The **Attribute Information** screen displays.

- In the **Enter the attribute value in:** field select **String** and type a number in the range 1 to 4094 or a **Name** for this policy. This **Name** should match a name in the VLAN mapping table on the ZyXEL Device. Wireless stations belonging to the VLAN Group specified in this policy will be given a **VLAN ID** specified in the ZyXEL Device VLAN table.
- Click **OK**.

**Figure 124** VLAN ID Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Attribute Information". It contains the following fields:

- Attribute name: Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID
- Attribute number: 81
- Attribute format: OctetString
- Enter the attribute value in: ☒ String ☐ Hexadecimal
- Value: 10

At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

**15** Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 122 on page 193](#).

- Select **Tunnel-Type**.
- Click **Add**.

**16** The **Enumerable Attribute Information** screen displays.

- Select **Virtual LANs (VLAN)** from the attribute value drop-down list box.
- Click **OK**.

**Figure 125** VLAN Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Type

Enumerable Attribute Information

Attribute name:  
Tunnel-Type

Attribute number:  
64

Attribute format:  
Enumerator

Attribute value:  
Virtual LANs (VLAN)

OK Cancel

- 17 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 122 on page 193](#).
- Click the **Close** button.
  - The completed **Advanced** tab configuration should resemble the following screen.

**Figure 126** Completed Advanced Tab

Allow - VLAN Group 10 Properties

Settings

Policy name:

Specify the condition

Windows-Groups m...

Add...

If a user matches th...

☒ Grant remote c...

☐ Deny remote c...

Access will be is overridden: c...

Edit Profile...

Edit Dial-in Profile

Dial-in Constraints | IP | Multilink

Authentication | Encryption | Advanced

Specify additional connection attributes to be returned to the Remote Access Server.

Parameters:

Name	Vendor	Value
Service-Type	RADIUS Standard	Framed
Framed-Protocol	RADIUS Standard	PPP
Tunnel-Medium-Type	RADIUS Standard	802 (includes all 802 m...
Tunnel-Priv-Group-ID	RADIUS Standard	10
Tunnel-Type	RADIUS Standard	Virtual LANs (VLAN)

Add... Remove Edit...

OK Cancel Apply



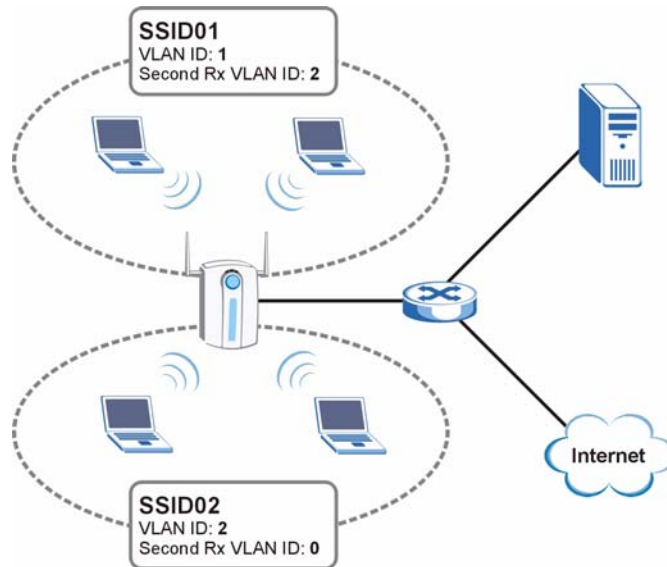
**Repeat the Configuring Remote Access Policies procedure for each VLAN Group defined in the Active Directory. Remember to place the most general Remote Access Policies at the bottom of the list and the most specific at the top of the list.**



### 16.2.5 Second Rx VLAN ID Example

In this example, the ZyXEL Device is configured to tag packets from **SSID01** with VLAN ID 1 and tag packets from **SSID02** with VLAN ID 2. **VLAN 1** and **VLAN 2** have access to a server, S, and the Internet, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 127** Second Rx VLAN ID Example



Packets sent from the server **S** back to the switch are tagged with a VLAN ID (incoming VLAN ID). These incoming VLAN packets are forwarded to the ZyXEL Device. The ZyXEL Device compares the VLAN ID in the packet header with each SSID's configured VLAN ID and second Rx VLAN ID settings.

In this example, **SSID01**'s second Rx VLAN ID is set to **2**. All incoming packets tagged with VLAN ID **2** are forwarded to **SSID02**, and also to **SSID01**. However, **SSID02** has no second Rx VLAN ID configured, and the ZyXEL Device forwards only packets tagged with VLAN ID **2** to it.

#### 16.2.5.1 Second Rx VLAN Setup Example

The following steps show you how to setup a second Rx VLAN ID on the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 Log into the Web Configurator.
- 2 Click **VLAN > Wireless VLAN**.
- 3 If VLAN is not already enabled, click **Enable Virtual LAN** and set up the **Management VLAN ID** (see [Section 16.2.3 on page 185](#)).



**If no devices are in the management VLAN, then no one will be able to access the ZyXEL Device and you will have to restore the default configuration file.**

- 4 Select the SSID profile you want to configure (**SSID03** in this example), and enter the **VLAN ID** number (between 1 and 4094).



- 5 Enter a **Second Rx VLAN ID**. The following screen shows **SSID03** tagged with a **VLAN ID** of **3** and a **Second Rx VLAN ID** of **4**.

**Figure 128** Configuring SSID: Second Rx VLAN ID Example

WIRELESS VLAN

RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

☒ Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID

10

(1 ~ 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	<div>1</div>	<div>0</div>
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	<div>2</div>	<div>0</div>
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	<div>3</div>	<div>4</div>
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	<div>4</div>	<div>0</div>
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	<div>5</div>	<div>0</div>
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	<div>6</div>	<div>0</div>
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	<div>7</div>	<div>0</div>
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	<div>8</div>	<div>0</div>
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	<div>9</div>	<div>0</div>
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	<div>10</div>	<div>0</div>
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	<div>11</div>	<div>0</div>
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	<div>12</div>	<div>0</div>
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	<div>13</div>	<div>0</div>
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	<div>14</div>	<div>0</div>
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	<div>15</div>	<div>0</div>
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	<div>16</div>	<div>0</div>

Apply

Reset

- 6 Click **Apply** to save these settings. Outgoing packets from clients in **SSID03** are tagged with a **VLAN ID** of **3**, and incoming packets with a **VLAN ID** of **3** or **4** are forwarded to **SSID03**.



# Maintenance

This chapter displays system information such as ZyNOS firmware, port IP addresses and port traffic statistics.

## 17.1 Maintenance Overview

The maintenance screens can help you view system information, upload new firmware, manage configuration and restart your ZyXEL Device.

## 17.2 System Status Screen

Click **MAINTENANCE** to open the **System Status** screen, where you can use to monitor your ZyXEL Device. Note that these labels are READ-ONLY and are meant to be used for diagnostic purposes.

**Figure 129** System Status

Status	Association List	Channel Usage	F/W Upload	Configuration	Restart
<p>System Name : NWA-3160  ZyNOS Firmware Version : V3.60(AAL.0)b1   04/13/2007</p> <p>IP Address : 192.168.1.2      DHCP : None  IP Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><a href="#">Show Statistics</a></p>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 73** System Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This is the <b>System Name</b> you can configure in the <b>SYSTEM &gt; General</b> screen. It is for identification purposes
ZyNOS Firmware Version	This is the ZyNOS Firmware version and date created. ZyNOS is ZyXEL's proprietary Network Operating System design.
IP Address	This is the Ethernet port IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This is the Ethernet port subnet mask.
DHCP	This is the Ethernet port DHCP role - <b>Client</b> or <b>None</b> .
Show Statistics	Click <b>Show Statistics</b> to see router performance statistics such as number of packets sent and number of packets received for each port.

## 17.2.1 System Statistics

Click **Maintenance > Show Statistics**. Read-only information here includes port status, packet specific statistics and bridge link status. Also provided are "system up time" and "poll interval(s)". The **Poll Interval** field is configurable. The fields in this screen vary according to the current wireless mode.

**Figure 130** System Status: Show Statistics

Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
LAN	100M/Full	16724	10264	0	64	0	1:41:39
WLAN	54M	26107	725	0	0	0	6:15:52

Poll Interval(s) :  sec

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 74** System Status: Show Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the Ethernet port ( <b>LAN</b> ) or wireless LAN.
Status	This shows the port speed and duplex setting if you are using Ethernet encapsulation for the Ethernet port. Ethernet port connections can be in half-duplex or full-duplex mode. Full-duplex refers to a device's ability to send and receive simultaneously, while half-duplex indicates that traffic can flow in only one direction at a time. The Ethernet port must use the same speed or duplex mode setting as the peer Ethernet port in order to connect. This shows the transmission speed only for the wireless adaptors.
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets on this port.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets on this port.
Collisions	This is the number of collisions on this port.
Tx B/s	This shows the transmission speed in bytes per second on this port.
Rx B/s	This shows the reception speed in bytes per second on this port.
Up Time	This is total amount of time the line has been up.
Poll Interval(s)	Enter the time interval for refreshing statistics.
Set Interval	Click this button to apply the new poll interval you entered above.
Stop	Click this button to stop refreshing statistics.

## 17.3 Association List

View the wireless stations that are currently associated with the ZyXEL Device in the **Association List** screen.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Association List** to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 131** Association List

Status

Association List

Channel Usage

F/W Upload

Configuration

Restart

Stations

Index	MAC Address	Association Time	SSID	Signal
001	00:12:f0:e8:dc:b3	06:08:59 2000/01/01	ZyXEL01	54%

Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 75** Association List

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Stations	
Index	This is the index number of an associated wireless station.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated wireless station.
Association Time	This field displays the time a wireless station first associated with the ZyXEL Device.
SSID	This field displays the SSID to which the wireless station is associated.
Signal	This field displays the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the wireless connection.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to reload the screen.

## 17.4 Channel Usage

The **Channel Usage** screen shows whether a channel is used by another wireless network or not. If a channel is being used, you should select a channel removed from it by five channels to completely avoid overlap.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Channel Usage** to display the screen shown next.

Wait a moment while the ZyXEL Device compiles the information.

**Figure 132** Channel Usage

Status	Association List	Channel Usage	F/W Upload	Configuration	Restart
SSID	MAC Address	Channel	Signal	Network Mode	
ZyXEL_1237	00:13:49:00:00:01	6	23 %	Infra	
ZyXEL	00:13:49:00:00:05	6	82 %	Infra	
Wireless	00:A0:C5:00:07:77	6	42 %	Infra	
Wireless	00:A0:C5:5C:AF:7A	11	25 %	Infra	
A-3214-G3000	00:A0:C5:F5:02:06	11	22 %	Infra, WEP	

Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 76** Channel Usage

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	This is the Service Set IDentification name of the AP in an Infrastructure wireless network or wireless station in an Ad-Hoc wireless network. For our purposes, we define an Infrastructure network as a wireless network that uses an AP and an Ad-Hoc network (also known as Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS)) as one that doesn't. See the chapter on wireless configuration for more information on basic service sets (BSS) and extended service sets (ESS).
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of the AP in an Infrastructure wireless network. It is randomly generated (so ignore it) in an Ad-Hoc wireless network.
Channel	This is the index number of the channel currently used by the associated AP in an Infrastructure wireless network or wireless station in an Ad-Hoc wireless network.
Signal	This field displays the strength of the AP's signal. If you must choose a channel that's currently in use, choose one with low signal strength for minimum interference.
Network Mode	"Network mode" in this screen refers to your wireless LAN infrastructure (refer to the Wireless LAN chapter) and security setup.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to reload the screen.

## 17.5 F/W Upload Screen

Find firmware at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) in a file that (usually) uses the system model name with a ".bin" extension, for example "NWA-3100.bin". The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot. See the Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance chapter for upgrading firmware using FTP/TFTP commands.

Click **MAINTENANCE > F/W Upload**. Follow the instructions in this screen to upload firmware to your ZyXEL Device.

**Figure 133** Firmware Upload

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 77** Firmware Upload

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click <b>Browse ...</b> to find it.

**Table 77** Firmware Upload

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Browse...	Click <b>Browse...</b> to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click <b>Upload</b> to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.



**Do not turn off the ZyXEL Device while firmware upload is in progress!**

After you see the **Firmware Upload in Process** screen, wait two minutes before logging into the ZyXEL Device again.

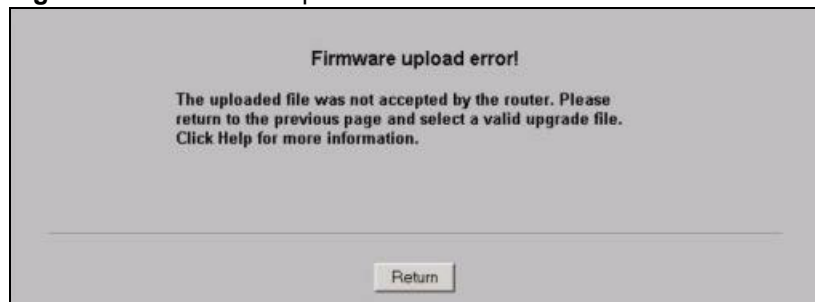
**Figure 134** Firmware Upload In Process

The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

**Figure 135** Network Temporarily Disconnected

After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the **System Status** screen.

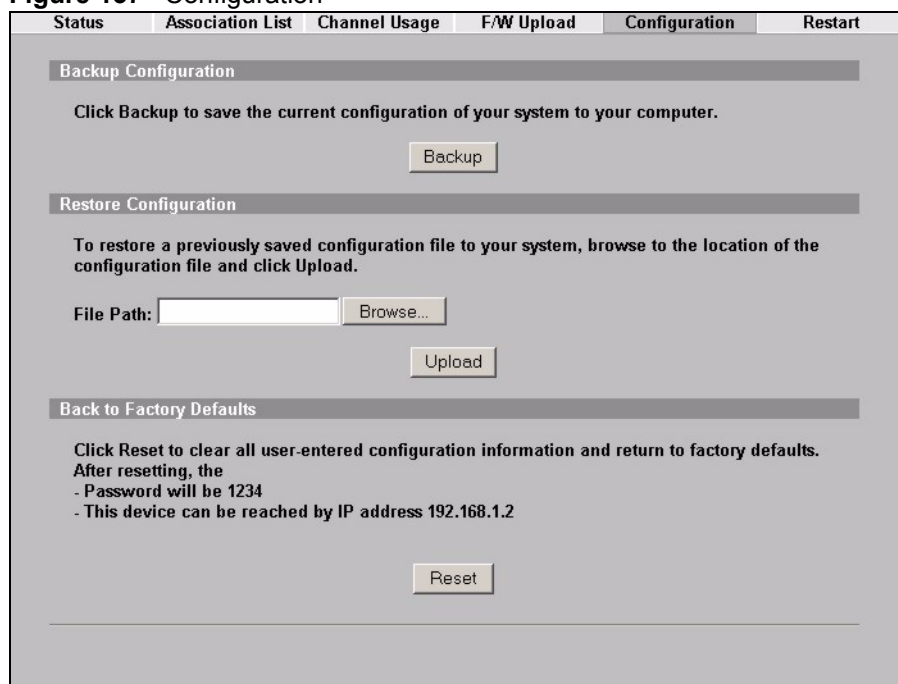
If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **Return** to go back to the **F/W Upload** screen.

**Figure 136** Firmware Upload Error

## 17.6 Configuration Screen

See [Chapter 24 on page 229](#) for information on how to transfer configuration files using FTP/TFTP commands.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Configuration**. Information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration appears as shown next.

**Figure 137** Configuration

### 17.6.1 Backup Configuration

Backup configuration allows you to back up (save) the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your ZyXEL Device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Click **Backup** to save the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to your computer.



## 17.6.2 Restore Configuration

Restore configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your ZyXEL Device.

**Table 78** Restore Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click <b>Browse ...</b> to find it.
Browse...	Click <b>Browse...</b> to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click <b>Upload</b> to begin the upload process.



**Do not turn off the ZyXEL Device while configuration file upload is in progress.**

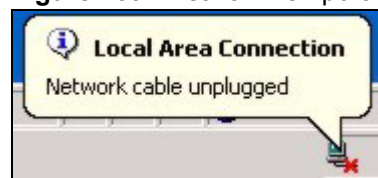
After you see a “restore configuration successful” screen, you must then wait one minute before logging into the ZyXEL Device again.

**Figure 138** Configuration Upload Successful



The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

**Figure 139** Network Temporarily Disconnected



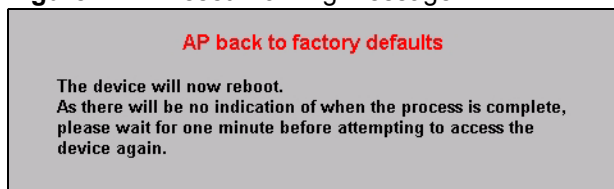
If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default ZyXEL Device IP address (192.168.1.2). See your Quick Start Guide for details on how to set up your computer's IP address.

If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **Return** to go back to the **Configuration** screen.

**Figure 140** Configuration Upload Error

### 17.6.3 Back to Factory Defaults

Pressing the **Reset** button in this section clears all user-entered configuration information and returns the ZyXEL Device to its factory defaults as shown on the screen. The following warning screen will appear.

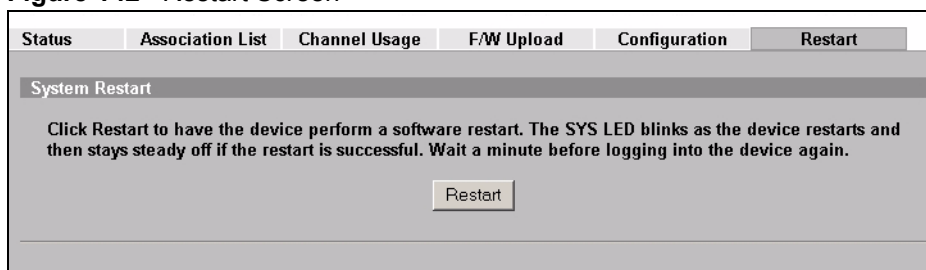
**Figure 141** Reset Warning Message

You can also press the **RESET** button to reset your ZyXEL Device to its factory default settings. Refer to [Section 2.2 on page 42](#) for more information.

## 17.7 Restart Screen

System restart allows you to reboot the ZyXEL Device without turning the power off.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Restart**. Click **Restart** to have the ZyXEL Device reboot. This does not affect the ZyXEL Device's configuration.

**Figure 142** Restart Screen

---

# PART III

## SMT and

# Troubleshooting

---

Introducing the SMT (209)  
General Setup (215)  
LAN Setup (217)  
SNMP Configuration (219)  
System Password (221)  
System Information and Diagnosis (223)  
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance (229)  
System Maintenance and Information (235)  
Troubleshooting (243)



# Introducing the SMT

This chapter describes how to access the SMT and provides an overview of its menus.

## 18.1 Introduction to the SMT

The ZyXEL Device's SMT (System Management Terminal) is a menu-driven interface that you can access from a terminal emulator through the console port or over a telnet connection. This chapter shows you how to access the SMT (System Management Terminal) menus, how to navigate the SMT and how to configure SMT menus.

## 18.2 Accessing the SMT via the Console Port

Use the console port to configure the ZyXEL Device via SMT menus. Connect the PS/2 connector of the console cable to the console port of the ZyXEL Device and the other end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) on your computer.

When configuring using the console port, you need a computer equipped with communications software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100 terminal emulation.
- 9600 Baud.
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, flow control set to none.

### 18.2.1 Initial Screen

When you turn on your ZyXEL Device, it performs several internal tests.

After the tests, the ZyXEL Device asks you to press [ENTER] to continue, as shown next.

**Figure 143** Initial Screen

```

Bootbase Version: V1.05 | 03/23/2007 11:39:53
RAM:Size = 32 Mbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 32608K OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !
FLASH: AMD 32M

ZyNOS Version: V3.60(AAL.0)b1 | 04/13/2007 19:40:56

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
..

Copyright (c) 1994 - 2007 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
initialize ch =0, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =1, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =2, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =3, ethernet address: 06:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =4, ethernet address: 0A:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =5, ethernet address: 0E:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =6, ethernet address: 12:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =7, ethernet address: 16:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =8, ethernet address: 1A:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =9, ethernet address: 1E:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =10, ethernet address: 06:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =11, ethernet address: 0A:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =12, ethernet address: 0E:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =13, ethernet address: 12:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =14, ethernet address: 16:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =15, ethernet address: 1A:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =16, ethernet address: 1E:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =17, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =18, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =19, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =20, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =21, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =22, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =23, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =24, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =25, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =26, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
Press ENTER to continue...

```

## 18.2.2 Entering the Password

The login screen appears after you press [ENTER], prompting you to enter the password, as shown below.

For your first login, enter the default password “1234”. As you type the password, the screen displays an “X” for each character you type.



**Whether or not you use administrator authentication on RADIUS, you still use the local system password to log in via the console port.**

Please note that if there is no activity for longer than five minutes after you log in, your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out and display a blank screen. If you see a blank screen, press [ENTER] to bring up the login screen again.

**Figure 144** Password Screen

Enter Password : XXXX

## 18.3 Connect to your ZyXEL Device Using Telnet

The following procedure details how to telnet into your ZyXEL Device.

- 1 In Windows, click **Start** (usually in the bottom left corner), **Run** and then type “telnet 192.168.1.2” (the default IP address) and click **OK**.
- 2 For your first login, enter the default password “1234”. As you type the password, the screen displays an asterisk “\*” for each character you type.

**Figure 145** Login Screen

Password : xxxx

- 3 After entering the password you will see the main menu.

Please note that if there is no activity for longer than five minutes (default timeout period) after you log in, your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out. You will then have to telnet into the ZyXEL Device again. You can use the web configurator or the CI commands to change the inactivity time out period.

## 18.4 Changing the System Password

Change the ZyXEL Device’s default password by following the steps shown next.

- 1 From the main menu, enter “23” to display **Menu 23 – System Password**.
- 2 Type your existing system password in the **Old Password** field, and press [ENTER].

**Figure 146** Menu 23 System Password

<p style="text-align: center;">Menu 23 - System Password</p> <p>Old Password= ****</p> <p>New Password= ?</p> <p>Retype to confirm= ?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Enter here to CONFIRM or ESC to CANCEL:</p>
--

- 3** Type your new system password in the **New Password** field (up to 30 characters), and press [ENTER].
- 4** Re-type your new system password in the **Retype to confirm** field for confirmation and press [ENTER].

Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk “\*” for each character you type.

## 18.5 SMT Menu Overview Example

The following table gives you an overview of your ZyXEL Device’s various SMT menus.

**Table 79** SMT Menus Overview

MENUS	SUB MENUS	
1 General Setup		
3 LAN Setup	3.2 TCP/IP Setup	
22 SNMP Configuration		
23 System Password		
24 System Maintenance	24.1 System Status	
	24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed	24.2.1 System Information
		24.2.2 Console Port Speed
	24.3 Log and Trace	
	24.4 Diagnostic	
	24.8 Command Interpreter Mode	
	24.10 Time and Date Setting	
	24.11 Remote Management Setup	

## 18.6 Navigating the SMT Interface

The SMT (System Management Terminal) is the interface that you use to configure your ZyXEL Device.



Several operations that you should be familiar with before you attempt to modify the configuration are listed in the table below.

**Table 80** Main Menu Commands

OPERATION	KEYSTROKE	DESCRIPTION
Move down to another menu	[ENTER]	To move forward to a submenu, type in the number of the desired submenu and press [ENTER].
Move up to a previous menu	[ESC]	Press [ESC] to move back to the previous menu.
Move to a "hidden" menu	Press [SPACE BAR] to change <b>No</b> to <b>Yes</b> then press [ENTER].	Fields beginning with "Edit" lead to hidden menus and have a default setting of <b>No</b> . Press [SPACE BAR] once to change <b>No</b> to <b>Yes</b> , then press [ENTER] to go to the "hidden" menu.
Move the cursor	[ENTER] or [UP]/[DOWN] arrow keys.	Within a menu, press [ENTER] to move to the next field. You can also use the [UP]/[DOWN] arrow keys to move to the previous and the next field, respectively.
Entering information	Type in or press [SPACE BAR], then press [ENTER].	You need to fill in two types of fields. The first requires you to type in the appropriate information. The second allows you to cycle through the available choices by pressing [SPACE BAR].
Required fields	<?> or <b>ChangeMe</b>	All fields with the symbol <?> must be filled in order to be able to save the new configuration. All fields with <b>ChangeMe</b> must not be left blank in order to be able to save the new configuration.
N/A fields	<N/A>	Some of the fields in the SMT will show a <N/A>. This symbol refers to an option that is Not Applicable.
Save your configuration	[ENTER]	Save your configuration by pressing [ENTER] at the message "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel". Saving the data on the screen will take you, in most cases to the previous menu.
Exit the SMT	Type "99", then press [ENTER].	Type 99 at the main menu prompt and press [ENTER] to exit the SMT interface.

After you enter the password, the SMT displays the main menu, as shown next.

**Figure 147** SMT Main Menu

Copyright (c) 1994 - 2007 ZyXEL Communications Corp.	
NWA-3160 Main Menu	
Getting Started	Advanced Management
1. General Setup	22. SNMP Configuration
3. LAN Setup	23. System Security
	24. System Maintenance
	99. Exit
Enter Menu Selection Number:	

## 18.6.1 System Management Terminal Interface Summary

**Table 81** Main Menu Summary

#	MENU TITLE	DESCRIPTION
1	General Setup	Use this menu to set up your general information.
3	LAN Setup	Use this menu to set up your LAN and WLAN connection.
22	SNMP Configuration	Use this menu to set up SNMP related parameters.
23	System Password	Use this menu to change your password.
24	System Maintenance	This menu provides system status, diagnostics, software upload, etc.
99	Exit	Use this to exit the SMT.

# General Setup

The chapter shows you the information on general setup.

## 19.1 General Setup

**Menu 1 – General Setup** contains administrative and system-related information (shown next). The **System Name** field is for identification purposes.

The **Domain Name** entry is what is propagated to the DHCP clients on the LAN. While you must enter the host name (System Name) on each individual computer, the domain name can be assigned from the ZyXEL Device via DHCP.

### 19.1.1 Procedure To Configure Menu 1

Enter “1” in the Main Menu to open **Menu 1 – General Setup** as shown next.

**Figure 148** Menu 1 General Setup

```

Menu 1 - General Setup

System Name= NWA-Series
Domain Name=
First System DNS Server= None
    IP Address= N/A
Second System DNS Server= None
    IP Address= N/A
Third System DNS Server= None
    IP Address= N/A

```

Fill in the required fields. Refer to the following table for more information about these fields.

**Table 82** Menu 1 General Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes “-” and underscores “_” are accepted.
Domain Name	This is not a required field. Leave this field blank or enter the domain name here if you know it.
First/Second/Third System DNS Server	Press [SPACE BAR] to select <b>From DHCP</b> , <b>User Defined</b> or <b>None</b> and press [ENTER]. These fields are not available on all models.

**Table 82** Menu 1 General Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
IP Address	Enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers. This field is available when you select <b>User-Defined</b> in the field above.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to Confirm..." to save your configuration, or press [ESC] at any time to cancel.	

## LAN Setup

This chapter shows you how to configure the LAN on your ZyXEL Device.

### 20.1 LAN Setup

This section describes how to configure the Ethernet using **Menu 3 – LAN Setup**. From the main menu, enter “3” to display menu 3.

**Figure 149 Menu 3 LAN Setup**

```
Menu 3 - LAN Setup

2. TCP/IP Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:
```

Detailed explanation about the LAN Setup menu is given in the next chapter.

### 20.2 TCP/IP Ethernet Setup

Use menu 3.2 to configure your ZyXEL Device for TCP/IP.

To edit menu 3.2, enter “3” from the main menu to display **Menu 3-LAN Setup**. When menu 3 appears, type “2” and press [ENTER] to display **Menu 3.2-TCP/IP Setup**, as shown next:

**Figure 150 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup**

```
Menu 3.2 - TCP/IP Setup
IP Address Assignment= Static
IP Address= 192.168.1.2
IP Subnet Mask= 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address= 0.0.0.0
```

Follow the instructions in the following table on how to configure the fields in this menu.

**Table 83** Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
IP Address Assignment	Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to select <b>Dynamic</b> to have the ZyXEL Device obtain an IP address from a DHCP server. You must know the IP address assigned to the ZyXEL Device (by the DHCP server) to access the ZyXEL Device again. Select <b>Static</b> to give the ZyXEL Device a fixed, unique IP address. Enter a subnet mask appropriate to your network and the gateway IP address if applicable.
IP Address	Enter the (LAN) IP address of your ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation
IP Subnet Mask	Your ZyXEL Device will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device.
Gateway IP Address	Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your ZyXEL Device that will forward the packet to the destination. On the LAN, the gateway must be a router on the same network segment as your ZyXEL Device.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to Confirm..." to save your configuration, or press [ESC] at any time to cancel.	

# SNMP Configuration

This chapter explains SNMP Configuration menu 22. See the web configurator chapter on SNMP for background information.

## 21.1 SNMP Configuration

To configure SNMP, select option 22 from the main menu to open **Menu 22 – SNMP Configuration** as shown next. The “community” for Get, Set and Trap fields is SNMP terminology for password.

**Figure 151** Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

```

Menu 22 - SNMP Configuration

SNMP:
  Get Community= public
  Set Community= public
  Trusted Host= 0.0.0.0
  Trap:
    Community= public
    Destination= 0.0.0.0

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the SNMP configuration parameters.

**Table 84** Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
SNMP:	
Get Community	Type the <b>Get Community</b> , which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext requests from the management station.
Set Community	Type the <b>Set Community</b> , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station.
Trusted Host	If you enter a trusted host, your ZyXEL Device will only respond to SNMP messages from this address. A blank (default) field means your ZyXEL Device will respond to all SNMP messages it receives, regardless of source.
Trap:	
Community	Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager.

**Table 84** Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel" to save your configuration or press [ESC] to cancel and go back to the previous screen.	



# System Password

This chapter describes how to configure the ZyXEL Device's system password.

## 22.1 System Password

You can configure the system password in this menu. Refer to [Section 18.4 on page 211](#).

**Figure 152** Menu 23 System Password

<p>Menu 23 - System Password</p> <p>Old Password= ? New Password= ? Retype to confirm= ?</p> <p>Enter here to CONFIRM or ESC to CANCEL:</p>
---

You should change the default password. If you forget your password you have to restore the default configuration file. Refer to [Section 2.2 on page 42](#).



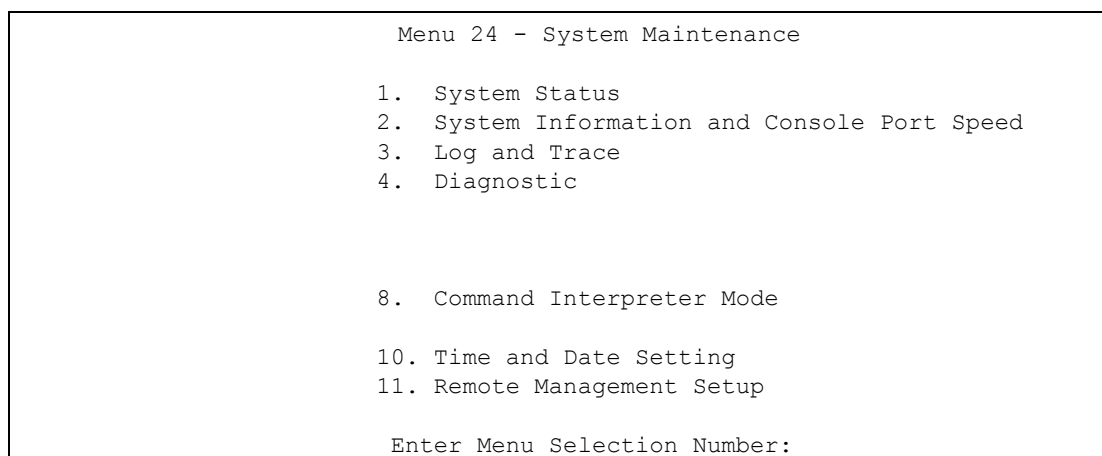
# System Information and Diagnosis

This chapter covers the information and diagnostic tools in SMT menus 24.1 to 24.4.

These tools include updates on system status, port status, log and trace capabilities and upgrades for the system software. This chapter describes how to use these tools in detail.

Type “24” in the main menu and press [ENTER] to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 153** Menu 24 System Maintenance



## 23.1 System Status

The first selection, **System Status** gives you information on the status and statistics of the ports, as shown next. **System Status** is a tool that can be used to monitor your ZyXEL Device. Specifically, it gives you information on your Ethernet and Wireless LAN status, and the number of packets sent and received.

To get to System Status, type “24” to go to **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**. From this menu, type “1”. There are two commands in **Menu 24.1 – System Maintenance – Status**. Entering 9 resets the counters; pressing [ESC] takes you back to the previous screen.

The following table describes the fields present in **Menu 24.1 – System Maintenance – Status** which are read-only and meant for diagnostic purposes.

**Figure 154 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status**

Menu 24.1 - System Maintenance - Status							00:15:06
							Sat. Jan. 01, 2000
Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Cols	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
Ethernet	100M/Full	761	366	0	305	192	0:15:01
WLAN1	54M	515	0	0	64	0	0:15:04
WLAN2	Down	0	0	0	0	0	0:00:00
Port	Ethernet Address		IP Address		IP Mask		DHCP
Ethernet	00:19:CB:1C:08:2A		192.168.1.2		255.255.255.0		None
WLAN1	00:19:CB:1C:08:2A						
WLAN2	00:00:00:00:00:00						
System up Time: 0:15:09							
ZyNOS F/W Version: V3.60(AAL.0)b1   04/13/2007							
Name: NWA-Series							
Press Command:							
COMMANDS: 9-Reset Counters ESC-Exit							

The following table describes the fields present in this menu.

**Table 85 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status**

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port type. Port types are: Ethernet, WLAN1 and WLAN2. WLAN2 is not supported.
Status	This shows the status of the remote node.
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets to this remote node.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets from this remote node.
Cols	This is the number of collisions on this connection.
Tx B/s	This shows the transmission rate in bytes per second.
Rx B/s	This shows the receiving rate in bytes per second.
Up Time	This is the time this channel has been connected to the current remote node.
Ethernet Address	This shows the MAC address of the port.
IP Address	This shows the IP address of the network device connected to the port.
IP Mask	This shows the subnet mask of the network device connected to the port.
DHCP	This shows the DHCP setting (None or Client) for the port.
System Up Time	This is the time the ZyXEL Device is up and running from the last reboot.
ZyNOS F/W Version	Refers to the ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) system firmware version. ZyNOS is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.
Name	This displays the device name.

## 23.2 System Information

To get to the System Information:

- 1 Enter “24” to display **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 Enter “2” to display **Menu 24.2 – System Information and Console Port Speed**.
- 3 From this menu you have two choices as shown in the next figure:

**Figure 155** Menu 24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed

```

Menu 24.2 - System Information and Console Port Speed
  1. System Information
  2. Console Port Speed

Please enter selection:

```



**The ZyXEL Device also has an internal console port for support personnel only. Do not open the ZyXEL Device as it will void your warranty.**

### 23.2.1 System Information

Enter “1” in menu 24.2 to display the screen shown next.

**Figure 156** Menu 24.2.1 System Information: Information

```

Menu 24.2.1 - System Maintenance - Information

Name: NWA-Series
Routing: BRIDGE
ZyNOS F/W Version: V3.60(AAL.0)b1 | 04/13/2007
Country Code:

LAN
Ethernet Address: 00:19:CB:1C:08:2A
IP Address: 192.168.1.2
IP Mask: 255.255.255.0
DHCP: None

Press ESC or RETURN to Exit:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

**Table 86** Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Name	Displays the system name of your ZyXEL Device. This information can be changed in <b>Menu 1 – General Setup</b> .
Routing	Refers to the routing protocol used.

**Table 86** Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
ZyNOS F/W Version	Refers to the ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) system firmware version. ZyNOS is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.
Country Code	Refers to the country code of the firmware.
LAN	
Ethernet Address	Refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) of your ZyXEL Device.
IP Address	This is the IP address of the ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation.
IP Mask	This shows the subnet mask of the ZyXEL Device.
DHCP	This field shows the DHCP setting of the ZyXEL Device.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel" to save your configuration or press [ESC] to cancel and go back to the previous screen.	

## 23.2.2 Console Port Speed

You can set up different port speeds for the console port through **Menu 24.2.2 – System Maintenance – Console Port Speed**. Your ZyXEL Device supports 9600 (default), 19200, 38400, 57600 and 115200 bps console port speeds. Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to select the desired speed in menu 24.2.2, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 157** Menu 24.2.2 System Maintenance: Change Console Port Speed

```

Menu 24.2.2 - System Maintenance - Change Console Port Speed

      Console Port Speed: 9600

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

After you changed your ZyXEL Device's console port speed, you must also make the same change to the console port speed parameter of your communication software.

## 23.3 Log and Trace

Your ZyXEL Device provides error logs and trace records that are stored locally.

### 23.3.1 Viewing Error Log

The first place you should look for clues when something goes wrong is the error log. Follow the procedures to view the local error/trace log:

- 1 Type "24" in the main menu to display **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 From menu 24, type "3" to display **Menu 24.3 – System Maintenance – Log and Trace**.

**Figure 158** Menu 24.3 System Maintenance: Log and Trace

```

Menu 24.3 - System Maintenance - Log and Trace
1. View Error Log
Please enter selection:

```

- 3** Enter 1 from **Menu 24.3 – System Maintenance – Log and Trace** and press [ENTER] twice to display the error log in the system.

After the ZyXEL Device finishes displaying the error log, you will have the option to clear it. Samples of typical error and information messages are presented in the next figure.

**Figure 159** Sample Error and Information Messages

```

55 Sat Jan 1 00:00:00 2000 PP05 ERROR Wireless LAN init fail, code=-1
56 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PP07 INFO LAN promiscuous mode <1>
57 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PINI INFO Last errorlog repeat 1 Times
58 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PINI INFO main: init completed
59 Sat Jan 1 00:00:02 2000 PP05 -WARN SNMP TRAP 3: link up
60 Sat Jan 1 00:00:30 2000 PSSV -WARN SNMP TRAP 0: cold start
61 Sat Jan 1 00:01:38 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session Begin
62 Sat Jan 1 00:06:44 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session End
63 Sat Jan 1 00:11:13 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session Begin
Clear Error Log (y/n):

```

## 23.4 Diagnostic

The diagnostic facility allows you to test the different aspects of your ZyXEL Device to determine if it is working properly. Menu 24.4 allows you to choose among various types of diagnostic tests to evaluate your system, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 160** Menu 24.4 System Maintenance: Diagnostic

```

Menu 24.4 - System Maintenance - Diagnostic

TCP/IP
1. Ping Host
2. DHCP Release
3. DHCP Renewal

System
11. Reboot System

Enter Menu Selection Number:
Host IP Address= N/A

```

Follow the procedure next to display this menu:

- 1** From the main menu, type “24” to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2** From this menu, type “4” to open **Menu 24.4 – System Maintenance – Diagnostic**.

The following table describes the diagnostic tests available in menu 24.4 for your ZyXEL Device and the connections.

**Table 87** Menu 24.4 System Maintenance Menu: Diagnostic

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Ping Host	Ping the host to see if the links and TCP/IP protocol on both systems are working.
DHCP Release	Release the IP address assigned by the DHCP server.
DHCP Renewal	Get a new IP address from the DHCP server.
Reboot System	Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
Host IP Address	If you typed "1" to Ping Host, now type the address of the computer you want to ping.



# Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance

This chapter tells you how to backup and restore your configuration file as well as upload new firmware and configuration files using the SMT screens.

## 24.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (often called the romfile or rom-0) contains the factory default settings in the menus such as password and TCP/IP Setup, etc. It arrives from ZyXEL with a rom filename extension. Once you have customized the ZyXEL Device's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the “ras” file) is the system firmware and has a “bin” filename extension. With many FTP and TFTP clients, the filenames are similar to those seen next.

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file " firmware.bin" to the ZyXEL Device.

```
ftp> get rom-0 config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to the computer file config.cfg.

If your [T]FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the ZyXEL Device only recognizes “rom-0” and “ras”. Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

The following table is a summary. Please note that the internal filename refers to the filename on the ZyXEL Device and the external filename refers to the filename not on the ZyXEL Device, that is, on your computer, local network or FTP site and so the name (but not the extension) will vary. After uploading new firmware see the **ZyNOS F/W Version** field in **Menu 24.2.1 – System Maintenance – Information** to confirm that you have uploaded the correct firmware version.

**Table 88** Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	Rom-0	*.rom	This is the configuration filename on the ZyXEL Device. Uploading the rom-0 file replaces the entire ROM file system, including your ZyXEL Device configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	Ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the ZyXEL Device.

## 24.2 Backup Configuration

Backup is highly recommended once your ZyXEL Device is functioning properly. FTP is the preferred method, although TFTP can also be used.

Please note that the terms “download” and “upload” are relative to the computer. Download means to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, while upload means from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.

### 24.2.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter “open” and the IP address of your ZyXEL Device.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter “root” and your SMT password as requested. The default is 1234.
- 5 Enter “bin” to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use “get” to transfer files from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, for example, “get rom-0 config.rom” transfers the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device to your computer and renames it “config.rom”. See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter “quit” to exit the FTP prompt.

**Figure 161** FTP Session Example

```

331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> get rom-0 zyxel.rom
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras
226 File received OK
ftp: 327680 bytes sent in 1.10Seconds
297.89Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit

```

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in third party FTP clients.

**Table 89** General Commands for Third Party FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

## 24.2.2 Backup Configuration Using TFTP

The ZyXEL Device supports the up/downloading of the firmware and the configuration file using TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) over LAN. Although TFTP should work over WAN as well, it is not recommended.

To use TFTP, your computer must have both telnet and TFTP clients. To backup the configuration file, follow the procedure shown next:

- 1 Use telnet from your computer to connect to the ZyXEL Device and log in. Because TFTP does not have any security checks, the ZyXEL Device records the IP address of the telnet client and accepts TFTP requests only from this address.
- 2 Put the SMT in command interpreter (CI) mode by entering 8 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 3 Enter command “sys stdio 0” to disable the SMT timeout, so the TFTP transfer will not be interrupted. Enter command “sys stdio 5” to restore the five-minute SMT timeout (default) when the file transfer is complete.
- 4 Launch the TFTP client on your computer and connect to the ZyXEL Device. Set the transfer mode to binary before starting data transfer.

- 5 Use the TFTP client (see the example below) to transfer files between the ZyXEL Device and the computer. The file name for the configuration file is `rom-0` (rom-zero, not capital o).

Note that the telnet connection must be active and the SMT in CI mode before and during the TFTP transfer. For details on TFTP commands (see following example), please consult the documentation of your TFTP client program. For UNIX, use “get” to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer and “binary” to set binary transfer mode.

### 24.2.3 Example: TFTP Command

The following is an example TFTP command:

```
TFTP [-i] host get rom-0 config.rom
```

where “i” specifies binary image transfer mode (use this mode when transferring binary files), “host” is the ZyXEL Device IP address, “get” transfers the file source on the ZyXEL Device (rom-0 name of the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device) to the file destination on the computer and renames it config.rom.

The following table describes some of the fields that you may see in third party TFTP clients.

**Table 90** General Commands for Third Party TFTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host	Enter the IP address of the ZyXEL Device. 192.168.1.2 is the ZyXEL Device's default IP address when shipped.
Send/Fetch	Use “Send” to upload the file to the ZyXEL Device and “Fetch” to back up the file on your computer.
Local File	Enter the path and name of the firmware file (*.bin extension) or configuration file (*.rom extension) on your computer.
Remote File	This is the filename on the ZyXEL Device. The filename for the firmware is “ras” and for the configuration file, is “rom-0”.
Binary	Transfer the file in binary mode.
Abort	Stop transfer of the file.

## 24.3 Restore Configuration

You can restore the configuration via FTP or TFTP to your ZyXEL Device. The preferred method is FTP. Note that this function erases the current configuration before restoring the previous backup configuration; please do not attempt to restore unless you have a backup configuration stored on disk. To restore configuration using FTP or TFTP is the same as uploading the configuration file, please refer to the following sections on FTP and TFTP file transfer for more details. The ZyXEL Device restarts automatically after the file transfer is complete.

### 24.3.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt Example

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter “open” and the IP address of your ZyXEL Device.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.

- 4 Enter “root” and your SMT password as requested. The default is 1234.
- 5 Enter “bin” to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use “put” to transfer files from the computer to the ZyXEL Device for example “put firmware.bin ras” transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the ZyXEL Device and renames it “ras”. Similarly “put config.rom rom-0” transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.rom) to the ZyXEL Device and renames it “rom-0”. Likewise “get rom-0 config.rom” transfers the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device to your computer and renames it “config.rom.” See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter “quit” to exit the FTP prompt.

**Figure 162** FTP Session Example

```

331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras
226 File received OK
ftp: 327680 bytes sent in 1.10Seconds
297.89Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit

```

More commands that you may find in third party FTP clients are listed earlier in this chapter.

### 24.3.2 TFTP File Upload

The ZyXEL Device also supports the up/downloading of the firmware and the configuration file using TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) over LAN. Although TFTP should work over WAN as well, it is not recommended.

To use TFTP, your computer must have both telnet and TFTP clients. To transfer the firmware and the configuration file, follow the procedure shown next:

- 1 Use telnet from your computer to connect to the ZyXEL Device and log in. Because TFTP does not have any security checks, the ZyXEL Device records the IP address of the telnet client and accepts TFTP requests only from this address.
- 2 Put the SMT in command interpreter (CI) mode by entering 8 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 3 Enter the command “sys stdio 0” to disable the SMT timeout, so the TFTP transfer will not be interrupted. Enter command “sys stdio 5” to restore the five-minute SMT timeout (default) when the file transfer is complete.
- 4 Launch the TFTP client on your computer and connect to the ZyXEL Device. Set the transfer mode to binary before starting data transfer.
- 5 Use the TFTP client (see the example below) to transfer files between the ZyXEL Device and the computer. The file name for the firmware is “ras” and the configuration file is “rom-0” (rom-zero, not capital o).

Note that the telnet connection must be active and the SMT in CI mode before and during the TFTP transfer. For details on TFTP commands (see following example), please consult the documentation of your TFTP client program. For UNIX, use “get” to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, “put” the other way around, and “binary” to set binary transfer mode.

### 24.3.3 Example: TFTP Command

The following is an example TFTP command:

```
TFTP [-i] host put firmware.bin ras
```

where “i” specifies binary image transfer mode (use this mode when transferring binary files), “host” is the ZyXEL Device’s IP address, “put” transfers the file source on the computer (firmware.bin – name of the firmware on the computer) to the file destination on the remote host (ras - name of the firmware on the ZyXEL Device).

Commands that you may see in third party TFTP clients are listed earlier in this chapter.

# System Maintenance and Information

This chapter leads you through SMT menus 24.8 and 24.10.

## 25.1 Command Interpreter Mode

The Command Interpreter (CI) is a part of the main system firmware. The CI provides much of the same functionality as the SMT, while adding some low-level setup and diagnostic functions. Enter the CI from the SMT by selecting menu 24.8. See the included disk or the [zyxel.com](http://zyxel.com) web site for more detailed information on CI commands. Enter 8 from **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**. A list of valid commands can be found by typing `help` or `?` at the command prompt. Type “exit” to return to the SMT main menu when finished.



**Use of undocumented commands or misconfiguration can damage the unit and possibly render it unusable.**

**Figure 163** Menu 24 System Maintenance

```
Menu 24 - System Maintenance

1. System Status
2. System Information and Console Port Speed
3. Log and Trace
4. Diagnostic

8. Command Interpreter Mode

10. Time and Date Setting
11. Remote Management Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:
```

**Figure 164** Valid CI Commands

```

Copyright (c) 1994 - 2007 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
NWA-3160> help or ?
Valid commands are:
sys          exit          ether          wlan
ip           bridge        bm           certificates
radius       8021x         radserv     wcfg
rogueAP
NWA-3160>

```

## 25.1.1 Command Syntax

- The command keywords are in `courier` new font.
- Enter the command keywords exactly as shown, do not abbreviate.
- The required fields in a command are enclosed in angle brackets `<>`.
- The optional fields in a command are enclosed in square brackets `[ ]`.
- The `|` symbol means or.

For example,

`sys filter netbios config <type> <on|off>`

means that you must specify the type of netbios filter and whether to turn it on or off.

## 25.1.2 Command Usage

A list of valid commands can be found by typing `help` or `?` at the command prompt. Always type the full command. Type `exit` to return to the SMT main menu when finished.

## 25.1.3 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection

The following describes the commands for enabling, disabling and configuring the brute-force password guessing protection mechanism for the password.

**Table 91** Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<code>sys pwdertrtm</code>	This command displays the brute-force guessing password protection settings.
<code>sys pwdertrtm 0</code>	This command turns off the password's protection from brute-force guessing. The brute-force password guessing protection is turned off by default.
<code>sys pwdertrtm N</code>	This command sets the password protection to block all access attempts for N (a number from 1 to 60) minutes after the third time an incorrect password is entered.

### 25.1.3.1 Configuring Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection: Example

```
sys pwdertrtm 5
```

This command sets the password protection to block all access attempts for five minutes after the third time an incorrect password is entered.



## 25.2 Time and Date Setting

The ZyXEL Device keeps track of the time and date. There is also a software mechanism to set the time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your ZyXEL Device. Menu 24.10 allows you to update the time and date settings of your ZyXEL Device. The updated time is then displayed in the ZyXEL Device error logs.

- 1 Select menu 24 in the main menu to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 Then enter 10 to go to **Menu 24.10 – System Maintenance – Time and Date Setting** to update the time and date settings of your ZyXEL Device as shown in the following screen.

**Figure 165** Menu 24.10 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

```

Menu 24.10 - System Maintenance - Time and Date Setting

Time Protocol= Manual
Time Server Address= N/A

Current Time:                      00 : 33 : 03
New Time (hh:mm:ss):              00 : 32 : 51

Current Date:                      2000 - 01 - 01
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd):            2000 - 01 - 01

Time Zone= GMT

Daylight Saving= No
Start Date (mm-nth-week-hr):       Jan. - 1st - Sun.(02) - 00
End Date (mm-nth-week-hr):         Jan. - 1st - Sun.(02) - 00

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

**Table 92** System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Time Protocol	Enter the time service protocol that your time server sends when you turn on the ZyXEL Device. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to check with your ISP/network administrator or use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the format. <b>Daytime (RFC 867)</b> format is day/month/year/time zone of the server. <b>Time (RFC-868)</b> format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. <b>NTP (RFC-1305)</b> is similar to <b>Time (RFC-868)</b> . <b>Manual</b> . The default, enter the time manually.
Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of your time server. Check with your ISP/ network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Current Time	This field displays an updated time only when you reenter this menu.
New Time	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format.
Current Date	This field displays an updated date only when you re-enter this menu.
New Date	Enter the new date in year, month and day format.

**Table 92** System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Time Zone	Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Saving	If you use daylight savings time, then choose <b>Yes</b> .
Start Date	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Daylight Saving</b> field. The <b>hr</b> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select <b>Second, Sunday, March</b> and <b>2:00</b>.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select <b>Mar., Last, Sun.</b> The time you type in the <b>hr</b> field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
End Date	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Daylight Saving</b> field. The <b>hr</b> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select <b>First, Sunday, November</b> and <b>2:00</b>.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select <b>Oct., Last, Sun.</b> The time you type in the <b>hr</b> field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
Once you have filled in this menu, press [ENTER] at the message "Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel" to save your configuration, or press [ESC] to cancel.	

## 25.2.1 Resetting the Time

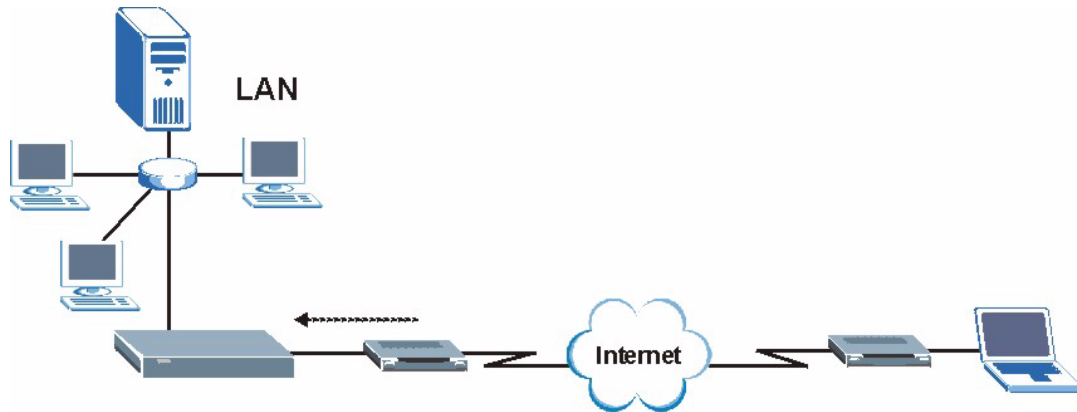
The ZyXEL Device resets the time in three instances:

- 1 On leaving menu 24.10 after making changes.
- 2 When the ZyXEL Device starts up, if there is a timeserver configured in menu 24.10.
- 3 24-hour intervals after starting.

## 25.3 Remote Management Setup

### 25.3.1 Telnet

You can configure your ZyXEL Device for remote Telnet access as shown next.

**Figure 166** Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network

### 25.3.2 FTP

You can upload and download ZyXEL Device firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

### 25.3.3 Web

You can use the ZyXEL Device's embedded web configurator for configuration and file management. See the online help for details.

### 25.3.4 Remote Management Setup

Remote management setup is for managing Telnet, FTP and Web services. You can customize the service port, access interface and the secured client IP address to enhance security and flexibility.

You can manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

Internet (**WLAN only**), the **LAN only**, **All** (LAN and WLAN) or **Disable** (neither).



**If you enable remote management of a service, but have applied a filter to block the service, then you will not be able to remotely manage the service.**

Enter "11" from menu 24, to display **Menu 24.11 - Remote Management Control** (shown next)

**Figure 167** Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

```

Menu 24.11 - Remote Management Control

TELNET Server:      Port = 23          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

FTP Server:         Port = 21          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

SSH Server          Certificate = auto_generated_self-signed-cert
                    Port = 22          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

HTTPS Server:       Certificate = auto_generated_self_signed_cert
                    Authenticate Client Certificates = No
                    Port = 443         Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

HTTP Server:        Port = 80          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

SNMP Service:       Port = 161         Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

DNS Service:        Port = 53          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

**Table 93** Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
TELNET Server: FTP Server: SSH Server: HTTPS Server: HTTP Server: SNMP Service: DNS Service:	Each of these read-only labels denotes a server or service that you may use to remotely manage the ZyXEL Device.
Port	This field shows the port number for the remote management service. You can change the port number for a service if needed, but you must use the same port number to use that service for remote management.
Access	Select the access interface (if any) by pressing the [SPACE BAR]. Choices are: <b>LAN only</b> , <b>WAN only</b> , <b>All</b> or <b>Disable</b> . The default is <b>LAN only</b> .
Secured Client IP	The default 0.0.0.0 allows any client to use this service to remotely manage the ZyXEL Device. Enter an IP address to restrict access to a client with a matching IP address.
Certificate	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. The ZyXEL Device has an automatically generated self signed certificate by default. The factory default certificate is common to all ZyXEL Device's that use certificates. You can replace the certificate when you log into the ZyXEL Device (see <a href="#">Chapter 2 on page 41</a> ) or you can use the Certificates configuration screen (see <a href="#">Chapter 14 on page 157</a> ).
Authenticate Client Certificates	Select <b>Yes</b> by pressing [SPACE BAR]. The internal RADIUS server uses one of the certificates listed in the My Certificates screen to authenticate each wireless client. The exact certificate used depends on the certificate information configured on the wireless client.
Once you have filled in this menu, press [ENTER] to save your configuration, or press [ESC] to cancel.	

### 25.3.5 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management over LAN or WAN will not work when:

- 1 You have disabled that service in menu 24.11.
- 2 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field (menu 24.11) does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 3 There is already another remote management session of the same type (Telnet, FTP or Web) running. You may only have one remote management session of the same type running at one time.
- 4 There is a web remote management session running with a Telnet session. A Telnet session will be disconnected if you begin a web session; it will not begin if there already is a web session.

## 25.4 System Timeout

There is a system timeout of five minutes (300 seconds) for Telnet/web/FTP connections. Your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out if you do nothing in this timeout period, except when it is continuously updating the status in menu 24.1 or when `sys studio` has been changed on the command line.



# Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs](#)
- [ZyXEL Device Access and Login](#)
- [Internet Access](#)
- [Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting](#)

## 26.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs



---

**The ZyXEL Device does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.**

---

- 1 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the ZyXEL Device.
- 2 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the ZyXEL Device and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.



---

**One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.**

---

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Section 1.6 on page 39](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor to the ZyXEL Device.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

## 26.2 ZyXEL Device Access and Login



---

### I forgot the IP address for the ZyXEL Device.

---

- 1 The default IP address is **192.168.1.2**.
- 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the ZyXEL Device by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click **Start > Run**, enter “**cmd**”, and then enter “**ipconfig**”. The IP address of the **Default Gateway** might be the IP address of the ZyXEL Device (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.
- 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 42](#).



---

### I forgot the password.

---

- 1 The default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 42](#).



---

### I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator.

---

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
  - The default IP address is 192.168.1.2.
  - If you changed the IP address ([Section 10.3 on page 134](#)), use the new IP address.
  - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I forgot the IP address for the ZyXEL Device](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.6 on page 39](#).
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled. See [Section 26.1 on page 243](#).
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the ZyXEL Device, skip this step.)
  - If there is no DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer’s IP address is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device.
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the ZyXEL Device with the default IP address. See your Quick Start Guide.
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.



**Advanced Suggestions**

- Try to access the ZyXEL Device using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the ZyXEL Device, check the remote management settings to find out why the ZyXEL Device does not respond to HTTP.
- If your computer is connected to the **WAN** port or is connected wirelessly, use a computer that is connected to a **LAN/ETHERNET** port.




---

**I can see the Login screen, but I cannot log in to the ZyXEL Device.**


---

- 1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default password is **1234**. This fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You cannot log in to the web configurator while someone is using the SMT or Telnet to access the ZyXEL Device. Log out of the ZyXEL Device in the other session, or ask the person who is logged in to log out.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 42](#).




---

**I cannot access the SMT.**


---

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.




---

**I cannot access the ZyXEL Device via the console port.**


---

- 1 Check to see if the ZyXEL Device is connected to your computer's console port.
- 2 Check to see if the communications program is configured correctly. The communications software should be configured as follows:  
 VT100 terminal emulation.  
 9,600 bps is the default speed on leaving the factory. Try other speeds in case the speed has been changed.  
 No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, data flow set to none.




---

**I cannot use FTP to upload / download the configuration file. / I cannot use FTP to upload new firmware.**


---

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.

## 26.3 Internet Access



---

### I cannot access the Internet.

---

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 26.1 on page 243](#).
- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure the wireless settings on the wireless client are the same as the settings on the AP.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device, and follow the directions in the Quick Start Guide again.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.



---

### I cannot access the Internet anymore. I had access to the Internet (with the ZyXEL Device), but my Internet connection is not available anymore.

---

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.6 on page 39](#).
- 2 Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
- 3 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.



---

### The Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

---

- 1 There might be a lot of traffic on the network. Look at the LEDs, and check [Section 1.6 on page 39](#). If the ZyXEL Device is sending or receiving a lot of information, try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications.
- 2 Check the signal strength. If the signal is weak, try moving the ZyXEL Device closer to the AP (if possible), and look around to see if there are any devices that might be interfering with the wireless network (microwaves, other wireless networks, and so on).
- 3 Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

#### Advanced Suggestions

- Check the settings for QoS. If it is disabled, you might consider activating it. If it is enabled, you might consider raising or lowering the priority for some applications.

## 26.4 Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting



---

**I cannot access the ZyXEL Device or ping any computer from the WLAN.**

---

- 1** Make sure the wireless LAN is enabled on the ZyXEL Device
- 2** Make sure the wireless adapter on the wireless station is working properly.
- 3** Make sure the wireless adapter (installed on your computer) is IEEE 802.11 compatible and supports the same wireless standard as the ZyXEL Device.
- 4** Make sure your computer (with a wireless adapter installed) is within the transmission range of the ZyXEL Device.
- 5** Check that both the ZyXEL Device and your wireless station are using the same wireless and wireless security settings.
- 6** Make sure traffic between the WLAN and the LAN is not blocked by the firewall on the ZyXEL Device.
- 7** Make sure you allow the ZyXEL Device to be remotely accessed through the WLAN interface. Check your remote management settings.



---

# PART IV

## Appendices and Index

---

Product Specifications (251)  
Power over Ethernet (PoE) Specifications (259)  
Power Adaptor Specifications (261)  
Setting up Your Computer's IP Address (263)  
Wireless LANs (269)  
Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions (283)  
IP Addresses and Subnetting (289)  
Text File Based Auto Configuration (297)  
Legal Information (305)  
Customer Support (309)  
Index (315)



# Product Specifications

The following tables summarize the ZyXEL Device's hardware and firmware features.

**Table 94** Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Dimensions	190x 135 x 40 mm
Weight	420g
Power	12V DC, 1.5 A max. (There is no tolerance for the DC input voltage.)
Ethernet Ports	Auto-negotiating: 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps in either half-duplex or full-duplex mode. Auto-crossover: Use either crossover or straight-through Ethernet cables.
Power over Ethernet (PoE)	IEEE 802.3af compliant.
Console Port	One MIL-C-5015 style RS-232 console port (PS/2 connector; Mini Din 6-pin)
Antenna Specifications	NWA-3160: Two 2dBi Dual Band (2.4 GHz/5 GHz) attachable dipole antennas. NWA-3163: Two 3dBi 2.4GHz attachable dipole antennas.
Output Power	NWA-3160: IEEE 802.11b/g 54Mbps: 16dBm 24Mbps: 17dBm 6Mbps: 18dBm 11Mbps: 18dBm  IEEE 802.11a 54Mbps: 12dBm 24Mbps: 12dBm 6Mbps: 14dBm 11Mbps: 14dBm  NWA-3163: IEEE 802.11b/g 54Mbps: 20dBm 24Mbps: 21dBm 11Mbps: 23dBm 6Mbps: 23dBm
Operating Environment	Temperature: 5° C ~ 50° C Humidity: 10% ~ 90% RH
Storage Environment	Temperature: -25° C ~ 60° C Humidity: 5% ~ 95% RH

**Table 94** Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Distance between the centers of the holes (for wall mounting) on the device's back.	125 mm
Recommended type of screws for wall-mounting	M4 Tap Screw (included), see <a href="#">Figure 169 on page 254</a> .
Approvals	EMC: FCC Class B, CE-EMC Class B, C-Tick Class B, Safety: CSA International, CE EN60950-1
Plenum Rating	The ZyXEL Device's housing is treated with fire-retardant chemicals. In the event of fire, plenum-rated materials burn more slowly and produce less smoke than non-plenum-rated materials, decreasing the quantity of toxic or asphyxiating material produced.

**Table 95** Firmware Specifications

Default IP Address	192.168.1.2
Default Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
Default Password	1234
Wireless LAN Standards	NWA-3160: IEEE 802.11a, IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g NWA-3163: IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g
Wireless security	WEP, WPA(2), WPA(2)-PSK, 802.1x
Layer 2 isolation	Prevents wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.
Multiple BSSID (MBSSID)	MBSSID mode allows the ZyXEL Device to operate up to 8 different wireless networks (BSSs) simultaneously, each with independently-configurable wireless and security settings.
Rogue AP detection	Rogue AP detection detects and logs unknown access points (APs) operating in the area.
Internal RADIUS server	PEAP, 32-entry Trusted AP list, 128-entry Trusted Users list.
VLAN	802.1Q VLAN tagging.
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP-compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.
WMM QoS	WMM (Wi-Fi MultiMedia) QoS (Quality of Service) allows you to prioritize wireless traffic.
Certificates	The ZyXEL Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.



**Table 95** Firmware Specifications

SSL Passthrough	SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) uses a public key to encrypt data that's transmitted over an SSL connection. Both Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer support SSL, and many Web sites use the protocol to obtain confidential user information, such as credit card numbers. By convention, URLs that require an SSL connection start with "https" instead of "http". The ZyXEL Device allows SSL connections to take place through the ZyXEL Device.
MAC Address Filter	Your ZyXEL Device checks the MAC address of the wireless station against a list of allowed or denied MAC addresses.
Wireless Association List	With the wireless association list, you can see the list of the wireless stations that are currently using the ZyXEL Device to access your wired network.
Logging and Tracing	Built-in message logging and packet tracing.
Embedded FTP and TFTP Servers	The embedded FTP and TFTP servers enable fast firmware upgrades as well as configuration file backups and restoration.
Auto Configuration	Administrators can use text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings for multiple APs. The AP can automatically get a configuration file from a TFTP server at start up or after renewing DHCP client information.
SNMP	SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your ZyXEL Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the ZyXEL Device through the network. The ZyXEL Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and version two c (SNMPv2c).
DFS (NWA-3160 only)	DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) allows a wider choice of 802.11a wireless channels.

## Wall-mounting Instructions

Complete the following steps to hang your ZyXEL Device on a wall.



See [Table 94 on page 251](#) for the size of screws to use and how far apart to place them.

- 1 Select a position free of obstructions on a sturdy wall.
- 2 Drill two holes for the screws.

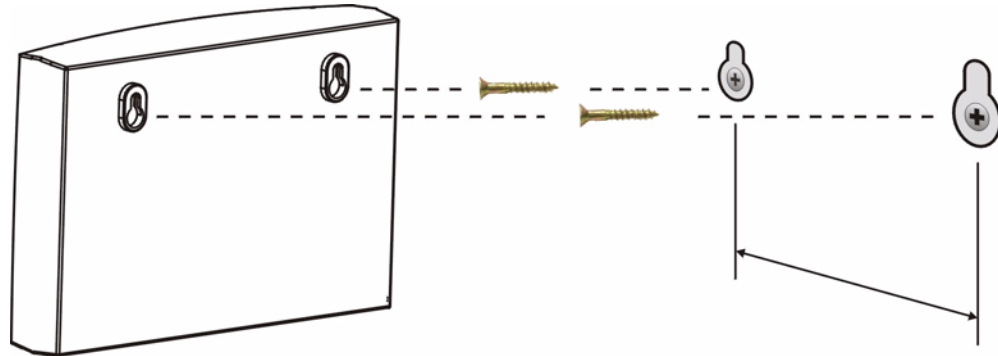


**Be careful to avoid damaging pipes or cables located inside the wall when drilling holes for the screws.**

- 3 Do not insert the screws all the way into the wall. Leave a small gap of about 0.5 cm between the heads of the screws and the wall.

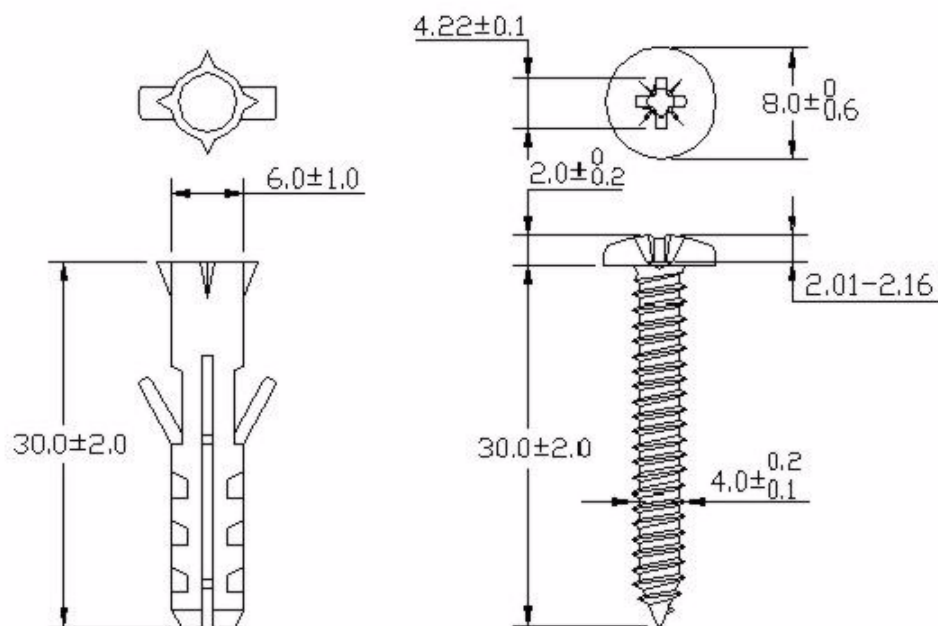
- 4 Make sure the screws are snugly fastened to the wall. They need to hold the weight of the ZyXEL Device with the connection cables.
- 5 Align the holes on the back of the ZyXEL Device with the screws on the wall. Hang the ZyXEL Device on the screws.

**Figure 168** Wall-mounting Example



The following are dimensions of an M4 tap screw and masonry plug used for wall mounting. All measurements are in millimeters (mm).

**Figure 169** Masonry Plug and M4 Tap Screw



## Power Adaptor Specifications

**Table 96** North American Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-W 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5A, 18W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	UL, CUL (UL60950 Third Edition, CSA C22.2 No. 60950)

**Table 97** European Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-B 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A, 18 W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	TUV-GS, CE (EN 60950)

**Table 98** United Kingdom Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-D 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A, 18 W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	TUV-GS (BS EN 60950)

**Table 99** Australia and New Zealand Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-A 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A, 18 W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	DOFT (AS/NZS 60950, AS/NZSB 3112:1-2)

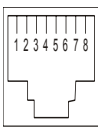
## Power over Ethernet (PoE) Specifications

You can use a power over Ethernet injector to power this device. The injector must comply to IEEE 802.3af.

**Table 100** Power over Ethernet Injector Specifications

Power Output	15.4 Watts maximum
Power Current	400 mA maximum

**Table 101** Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments

	PIN NO	RJ-45 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT
	1	Output Transmit Data +
	2	Output Transmit Data -
	3	Receive Data +
	4	Power +
	5	Power +
	6	Receive Data -
	7	Power -
	8	Power -

# Setting up Your Computer's IP Address

All computers must have a 10M or 100M Ethernet adapter card and TCP/IP installed.

Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to install and use TCP/IP on your computer. Windows 3.1 requires the purchase of a third-party TCP/IP application package.

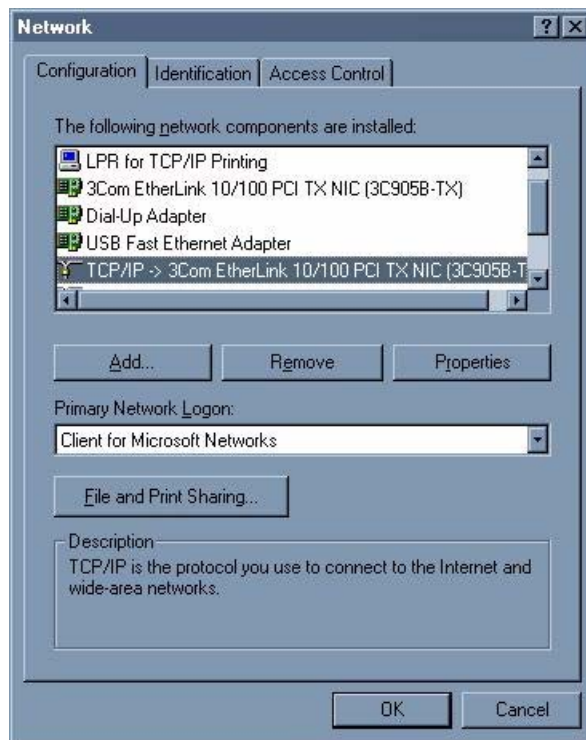
TCP/IP should already be installed on computers using Windows NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems.

After the appropriate TCP/IP components are installed, configure the TCP/IP settings in order to "communicate" with your network.

If you manually assign IP information instead of using dynamic assignment, make sure that your computers have IP addresses that place them in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device's LAN port.

## Windows 95/98/Me

Click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel** and double-click the **Network** icon to open the **Network** window

**Figure 170** Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration

## Installing Components

The **Network** window **Configuration** tab displays a list of installed components. You need a network adapter, the TCP/IP protocol and Client for Microsoft Networks.

If you need the adapter:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Adapter** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select the manufacturer and model of your network adapter and then click **OK**.

If you need TCP/IP:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Protocol** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of **manufacturers**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the list of network protocols and then click **OK**.

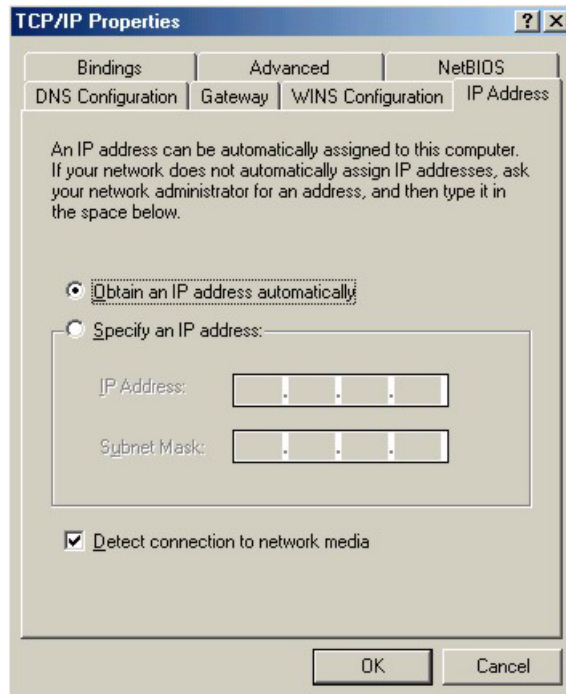
If you need Client for Microsoft Networks:

- 1 Click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Client** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of manufacturers.
- 4 Select **Client for Microsoft Networks** from the list of network clients and then click **OK**.
- 5 Restart your computer so the changes you made take effect.

## Configuring

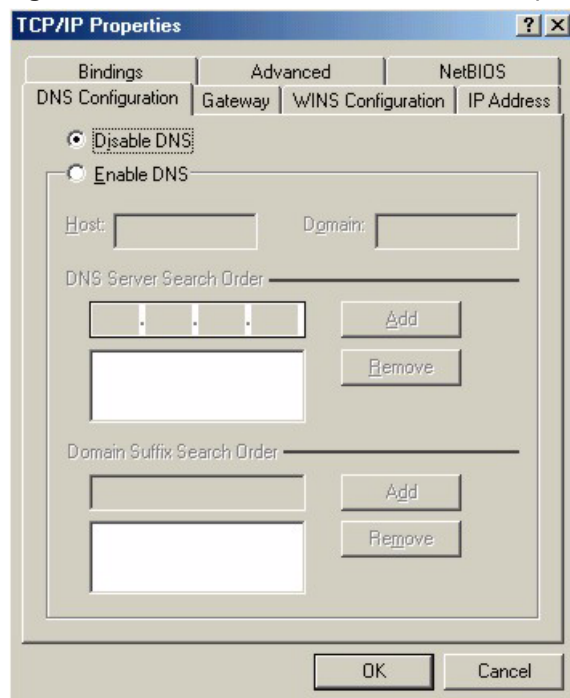
- 1 In the **Network** window **Configuration** tab, select your network adapter's TCP/IP entry and click **Properties**
- 2 Click the **IP Address** tab.
  - If your IP address is dynamic, select **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
  - If you have a static IP address, select **Specify an IP address** and type your information into the **IP Address** and **Subnet Mask** fields.

**Figure 171** Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address



- 3 Click the **DNS Configuration** tab.
  - If you do not know your DNS information, select **Disable DNS**.
  - If you know your DNS information, select **Enable DNS** and type the information in the fields below (you may not need to fill them all in).

**Figure 172** Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration



- 4 Click the **Gateway** tab.
  - If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove previously installed gateways.
  - If you have a gateway IP address, type it in the **New gateway** field and click **Add**.
- 5 Click **OK** to save and close the **TCP/IP Properties** window.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Network** window. Insert the Windows CD if prompted.
- 7 Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer when prompted.

## Verifying Settings

- 1 Click **Start** and then **Run**.
- 2 In the **Run** window, type "winipcfg" and then click **OK** to open the **IP Configuration** window.
- 3 Select your network adapter. You should see your computer's IP address, subnet mask and default gateway.

## Windows 2000/NT/XP

- 1 For Windows XP, click **start**, **Control Panel**. In Windows 2000/NT, click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel**.

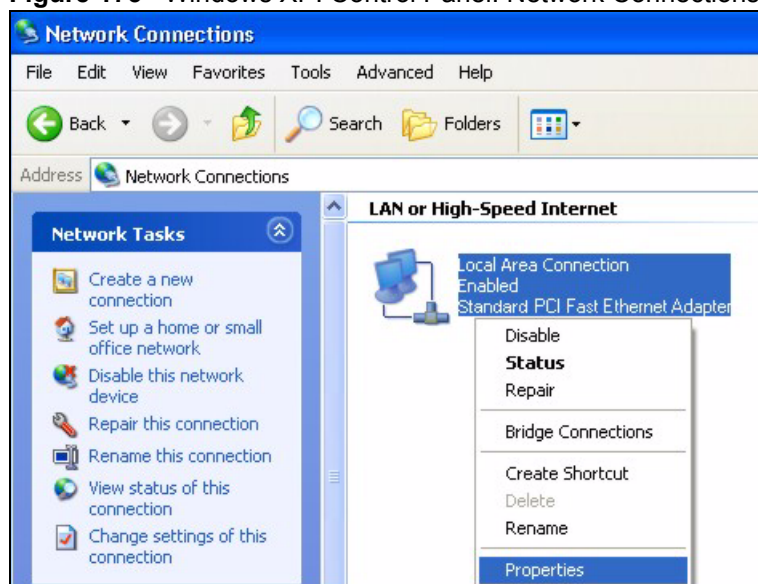


**Figure 173** Windows XP: Start Menu

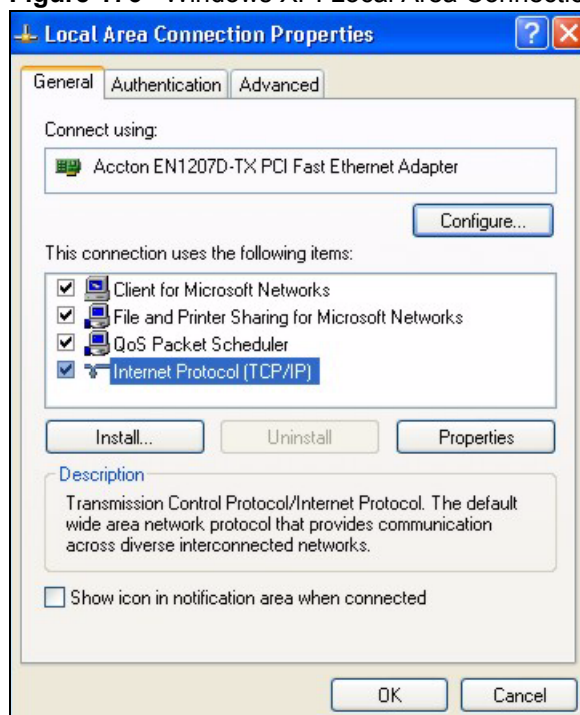
- 2 For Windows XP, click **Network Connections**. For Windows 2000/NT, click **Network and Dial-up Connections**.

**Figure 174** Windows XP: Control Panel

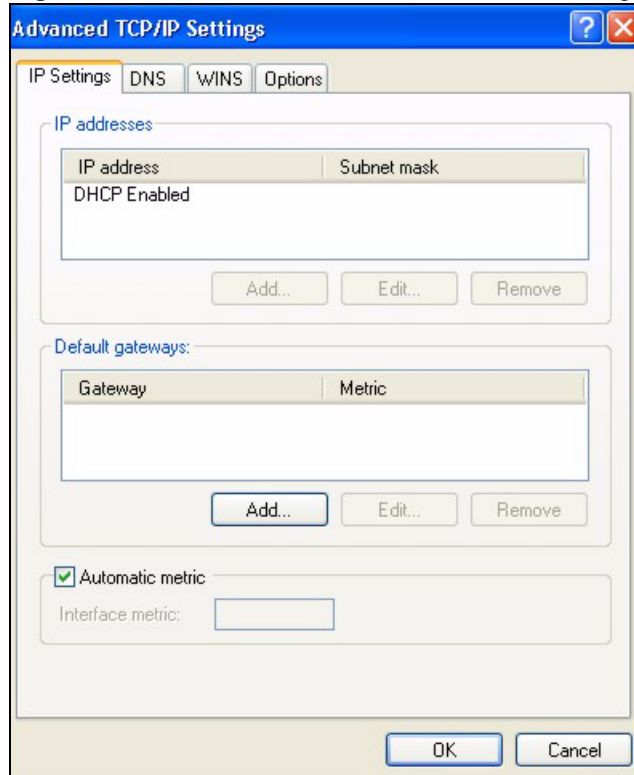
- 3 Right-click **Local Area Connection** and then click **Properties**.

**Figure 175** Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties

- 4 Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** (under the **General** tab in Win XP) and click **Properties**.

**Figure 176** Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties

- 5 The **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window opens (the **General** tab in Windows XP).
  - If you have a dynamic IP address click **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
  - If you have a static IP address click **Use the following IP Address** and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields. Click **Advanced**.

**Figure 177** Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings

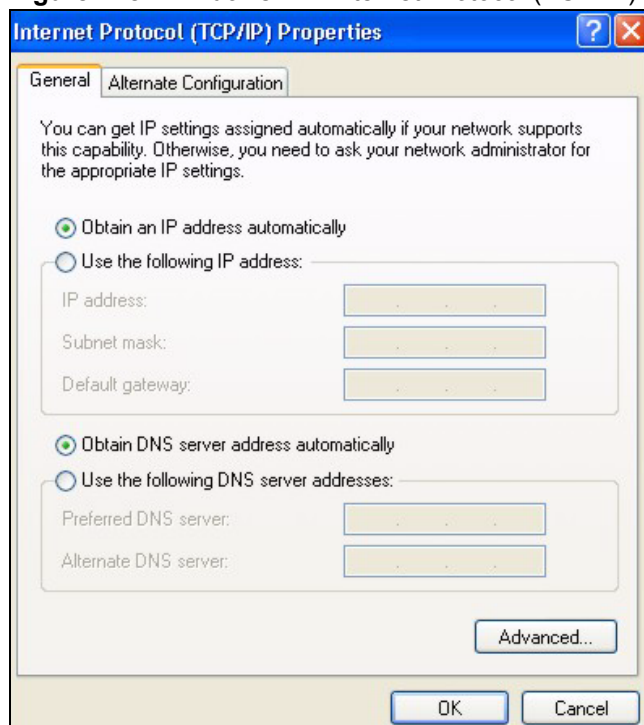
- 6** If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove any previously installed gateways in the **IP Settings** tab and click **OK**.

Do one or more of the following if you want to configure additional IP addresses:

- In the **IP Settings** tab, in IP addresses, click **Add**.
  - In **TCP/IP Address**, type an IP address in **IP address** and a subnet mask in **Subnet mask**, and then click **Add**.
  - Repeat the above two steps for each IP address you want to add.
  - Configure additional default gateways in the **IP Settings** tab by clicking **Add** in **Default gateways**.
  - In **TCP/IP Gateway Address**, type the IP address of the default gateway in **Gateway**. To manually configure a default metric (the number of transmission hops), clear the **Automatic metric** check box and type a metric in **Metric**.
  - Click **Add**.
  - Repeat the previous three steps for each default gateway you want to add.
  - Click **OK** when finished.
- 7** In the **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window (the **General** tab in Windows XP):
- Click **Obtain DNS server address automatically** if you do not know your DNS server IP address(es).
  - If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click **Use the following DNS server addresses**, and type them in the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** fields.

If you have previously configured DNS servers, click **Advanced** and then the **DNS** tab to order them.

**Figure 178** Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties



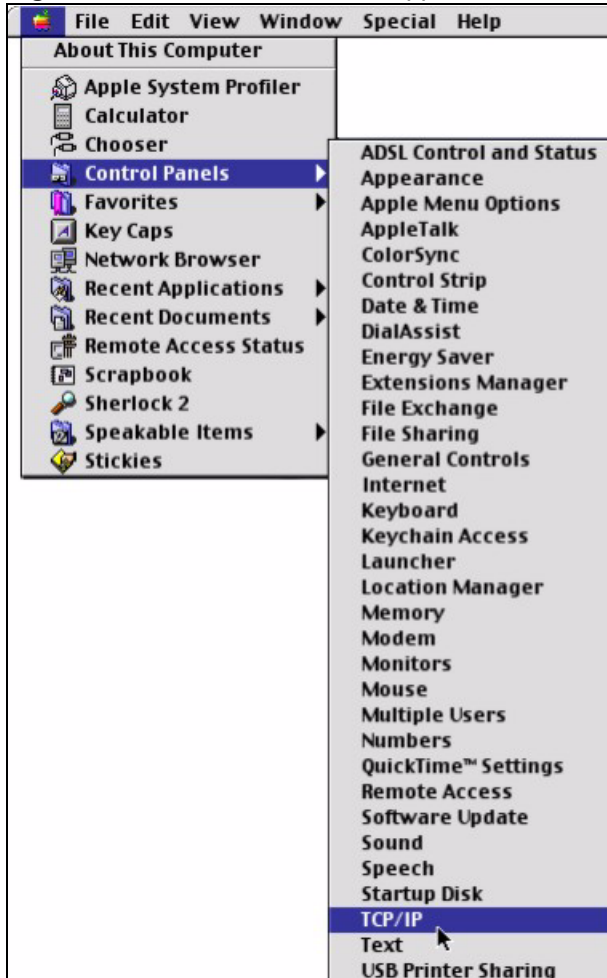
- 8** Click **OK** to close the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.
- 9** Click **OK** to close the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.
- 10** Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

## Verifying Settings

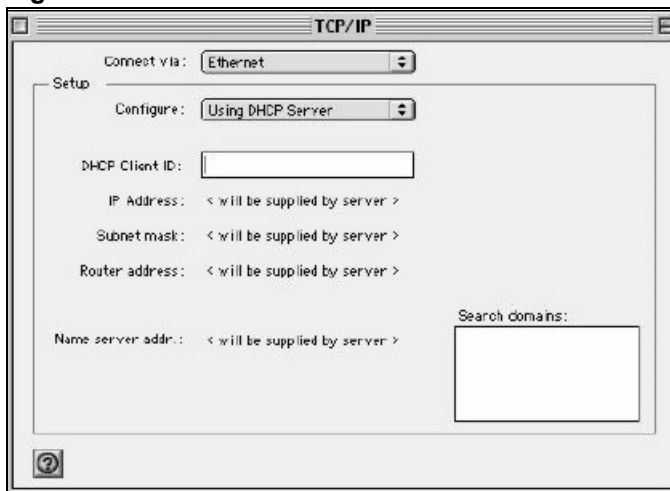
- 1** Click **Start**, **All Programs**, **Accessories** and then **Command Prompt**.
- 2** In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER]. You can also open **Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab.

## Macintosh OS 8/9

- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, **Control Panel** and double-click **TCP/IP** to open the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.

**Figure 179** Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu

- 2 Select **Ethernet built-in** from the **Connect via** list.

**Figure 180** Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP

- 3 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP Server** from the **Configure:** list.
- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
  - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.

- Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
  - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
  - Type the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in the **Router address** box.
- 5** Close the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.
  - 6** Click **Save** if prompted, to save changes to your configuration.
  - 7** Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

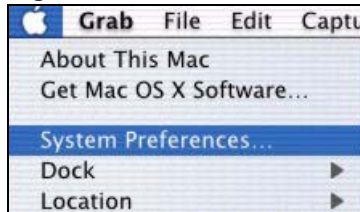
## Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **TCP/IP Control Panel** window.

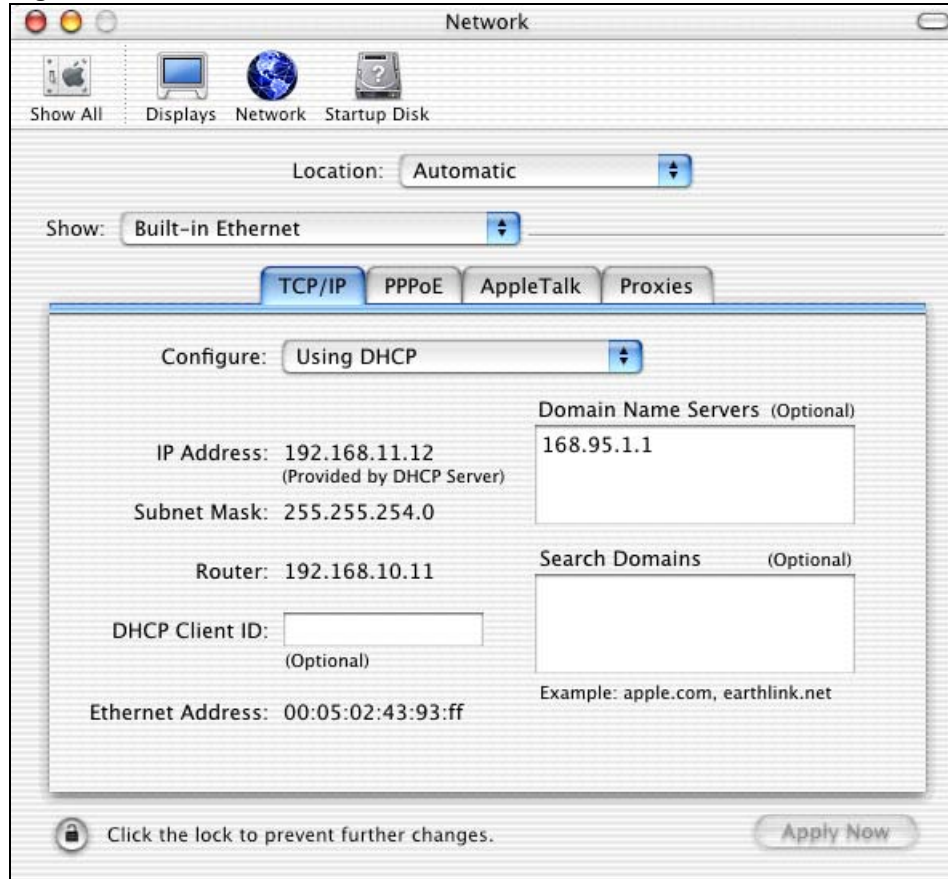
## Macintosh OS X

- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, and click **System Preferences** to open the **System Preferences** window.

**Figure 181** Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu



- 2** Click **Network** in the icon bar.
  - Select **Automatic** from the **Location** list.
  - Select **Built-in Ethernet** from the **Show** list.
  - Click the **TCP/IP** tab.
- 3** For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure** list.

**Figure 182** Macintosh OS X: Network

- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
  - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.
  - Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
  - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
  - Type the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in the **Router address** box.
- 5 Click **Apply Now** and close the window.
- 6 Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

## Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **Network** window.





# Wireless LANs

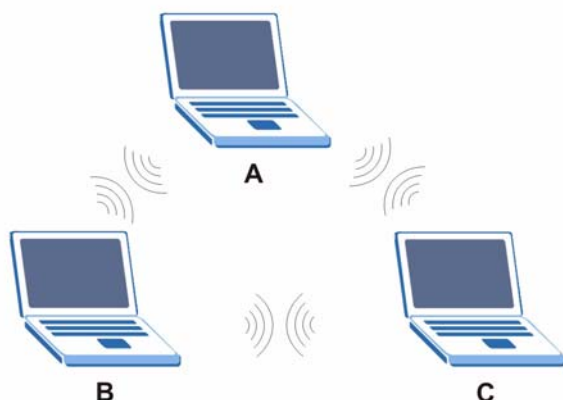
## Wireless LAN Topologies

This section discusses ad-hoc and infrastructure wireless LAN topologies.

### Ad-hoc Wireless LAN Configuration

The simplest WLAN configuration is an independent (Ad-hoc) WLAN that connects a set of computers with wireless adapters (A, B, C). Any time two or more wireless adapters are within range of each other, they can set up an independent network, which is commonly referred to as an ad-hoc network or Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS). The following diagram shows an example of notebook computers using wireless adapters to form an ad-hoc wireless LAN.

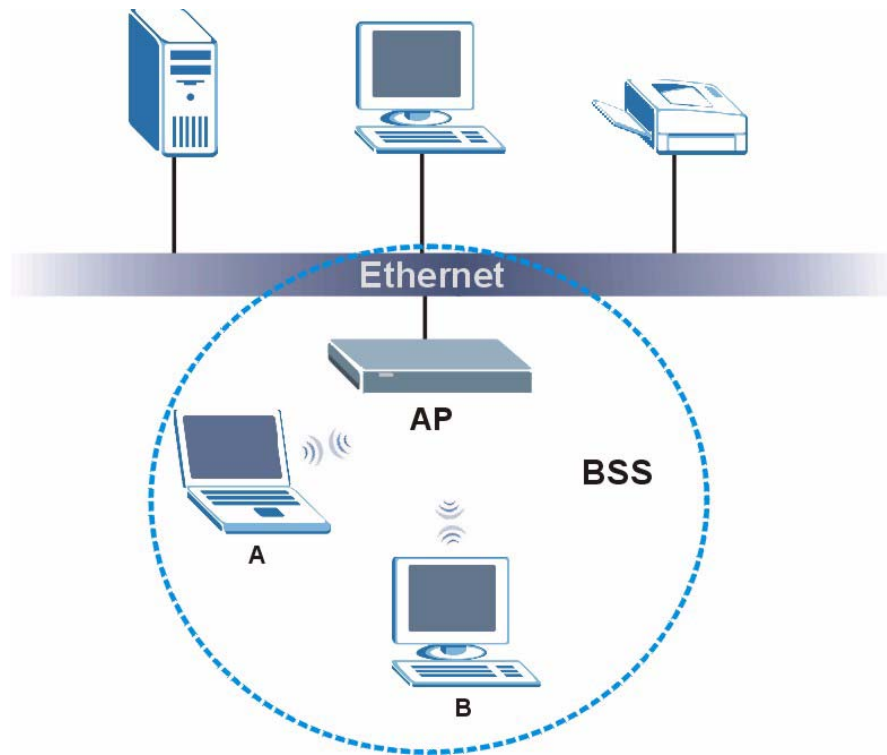
**Figure 183** Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network



### BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

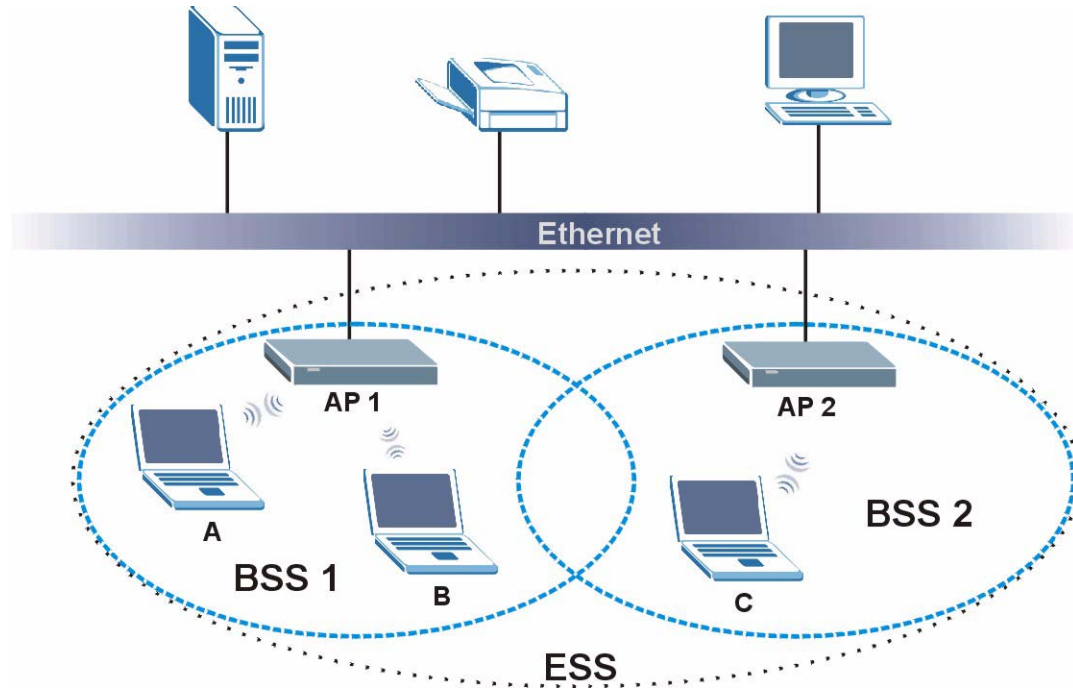
**Figure 184** Basic Service Set

## ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS).

This type of wireless LAN topology is called an Infrastructure WLAN. The Access Points not only provide communication with the wired network but also mediate wireless network traffic in the immediate neighborhood.

An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless clients within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

**Figure 185** Infrastructure WLAN

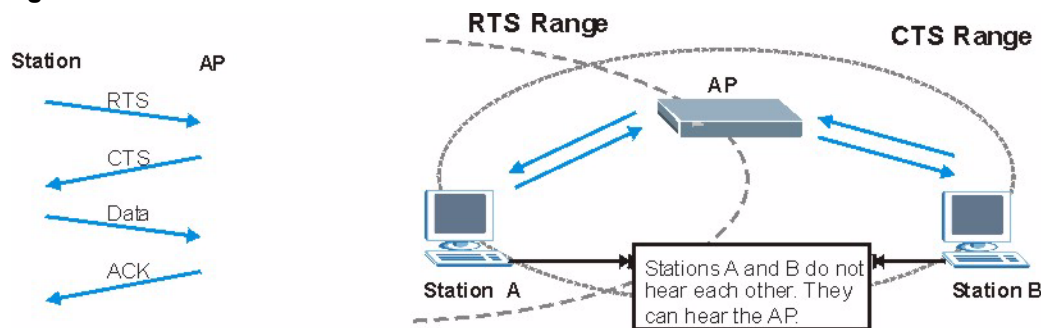
## Channel

A channel is the radio frequency(ies) used by IEEE 802.11a/b/g wireless devices. Channels available depend on your geographical area. You may have a choice of channels (for your region) so you should use a different channel than an adjacent AP (access point) to reduce interference. Interference occurs when radio signals from different access points overlap causing interference and degrading performance.

Adjacent channels partially overlap however. To avoid interference due to overlap, your AP should be on a channel at least five channels away from a channel that an adjacent AP is using. For example, if your region has 11 channels and an adjacent AP is using channel 1, then you need to select a channel between 6 or 11.

## RTS/CTS

A hidden node occurs when two stations are within range of the same access point, but are not within range of each other. The following figure illustrates a hidden node. Both stations (STA) are within range of the access point (AP) or wireless gateway, but out-of-range of each other, so they cannot "hear" each other, that is they do not know if the channel is currently being used. Therefore, they are considered hidden from each other.

**Figure 186** RTS/CTS

When station **A** sends data to the AP, it might not know that the station **B** is already using the channel. If these two stations send data at the same time, collisions may occur when both sets of data arrive at the AP at the same time, resulting in a loss of messages for both stations.

**RTS/CTS** is designed to prevent collisions due to hidden nodes. An **RTS/CTS** defines the biggest size data frame you can send before an RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake is invoked.

When a data frame exceeds the **RTS/CTS** value you set (between 0 to 2432 bytes), the station that wants to transmit this frame must first send an RTS (Request To Send) message to the AP for permission to send it. The AP then responds with a CTS (Clear to Send) message to all other stations within its range to notify them to defer their transmission. It also reserves and confirms with the requesting station the time frame for the requested transmission.

Stations can send frames smaller than the specified **RTS/CTS** directly to the AP without the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

You should only configure **RTS/CTS** if the possibility of hidden nodes exists on your network and the "cost" of resending large frames is more than the extra network overhead involved in the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

If the **RTS/CTS** value is greater than the **Fragmentation Threshold** value (see next), then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.



**Enabling the RTS Threshold causes redundant network overhead that could negatively affect the throughput performance instead of providing a remedy.**

## Fragmentation Threshold

A **Fragmentation Threshold** is the maximum data fragment size (between 256 and 2432 bytes) that can be sent in the wireless network before the AP will fragment the packet into smaller data frames.

A large **Fragmentation Threshold** is recommended for networks not prone to interference while you should set a smaller threshold for busy networks or networks that are prone to interference.

If the **Fragmentation Threshold** value is smaller than the **RTS/CTS** value (see previously) you set then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.

## Preamble Type

Preamble is used to signal that data is coming to the receiver. **Short** and **Long** refer to the length of the synchronization field in a packet.

Short preamble increases performance as less time sending preamble means more time for sending data. All IEEE 802.11b/g compliant wireless adapters support long preamble, but not all support short preamble.

Select **Long** preamble if you are unsure what preamble mode the wireless adapters support, and to provide more reliable communications in busy wireless networks.

Select **Short** preamble if you are sure the wireless adapters support it, and to provide more efficient communications.

Select **Dynamic** to have the AP automatically use short preamble when wireless adapters support it, otherwise the AP uses long preamble.



**The AP and the wireless adapters MUST use the same preamble mode in order to communicate.**

## IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN

IEEE 802.11g is fully compatible with the IEEE 802.11b standard. This means an IEEE 802.11b adapter can interface directly with an IEEE 802.11g access point (and vice versa) at 11 Mbps or lower depending on range. IEEE 802.11g has several intermediate rate steps between the maximum and minimum data rates. The IEEE 802.11g data rate and modulation are as follows:

**Table 102** IEEE 802.11g

DATA RATE (MBPS)	MODULATION
1	DBPSK (Differential Binary Phase Shift Keyed)
2	DQPSK (Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying)
5.5 / 11	CCK (Complementary Code Keying)
6/9/12/18/24/36/48/54	OFDM (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing)

## Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless clients, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the ZyXEL Device are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by device MAC address and hiding the ZyXEL Device identity.

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your ZyXEL Device.

**Table 103** Wireless Security Levels

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least Secure	Unique SSID (Default)
	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
Most Secure	WPA2



---

**You must enable the same wireless security settings on the ZyXEL Device and on all wireless clients that you want to associate with it.**

---

## IEEE 802.1x

In June 2001, the IEEE 802.1x standard was designed to extend the features of IEEE 802.11 to support extended authentication as well as providing additional accounting and control features. It is supported by Windows XP and a number of network devices. Some advantages of IEEE 802.1x are:

- User based identification that allows for roaming.
- Support for RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.
- Support for EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol, RFC 2486) that allows additional authentication methods to be deployed with no changes to the access point or the wireless clients.

## RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication, authorization and accounting. The access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks:

- Authentication
  - Determines the identity of the users.
- Authorization

Determines the network services available to authenticated users once they are connected to the network.

- Accounting  
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

RADIUS is a simple package exchange in which your AP acts as a message relay between the wireless client and the network RADIUS server.

## Types of RADIUS Messages

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user authentication:

- Access-Request  
Sent by an access point requesting authentication.
- Access-Reject  
Sent by a RADIUS server rejecting access.
- Access-Accept  
Sent by a RADIUS server allowing access.
- Access-Challenge  
Sent by a RADIUS server requesting more information in order to allow access. The access point sends a proper response from the user and then sends another Access-Request message.

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user accounting:

- Accounting-Request  
Sent by the access point requesting accounting.
- Accounting-Response  
Sent by the RADIUS server to indicate that it has started or stopped accounting.

In order to ensure network security, the access point and the RADIUS server use a shared secret key, which is a password, they both know. The key is not sent over the network. In addition to the shared key, password information exchanged is also encrypted to protect the network from unauthorized access.

## Types of EAP Authentication

This section discusses some popular authentication types: EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP and LEAP. Your wireless LAN device may not support all authentication types.

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE 802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, an access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server and an intermediary AP(s) that supports IEEE 802.1x. .

For EAP-TLS authentication type, you must first have a wired connection to the network and obtain the certificate(s) from a certificate authority (CA). A certificate (also called digital IDs) can be used to authenticate users and a CA issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner.

### **EAP-MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5)**

MD5 authentication is the simplest one-way authentication method. The authentication server sends a challenge to the wireless client. The wireless client ‘proves’ that it knows the password by encrypting the password with the challenge and sends back the information. Password is not sent in plain text.

However, MD5 authentication has some weaknesses. Since the authentication server needs to get the plaintext passwords, the passwords must be stored. Thus someone other than the authentication server may access the password file. In addition, it is possible to impersonate an authentication server as MD5 authentication method does not perform mutual authentication. Finally, MD5 authentication method does not support data encryption with dynamic session key. You must configure WEP encryption keys for data encryption.

### **EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security)**

With EAP-TLS, digital certifications are needed by both the server and the wireless clients for mutual authentication. The server presents a certificate to the client. After validating the identity of the server, the client sends a different certificate to the server. The exchange of certificates is done in the open before a secured tunnel is created. This makes user identity vulnerable to passive attacks. A digital certificate is an electronic ID card that authenticates the sender’s identity. However, to implement EAP-TLS, you need a Certificate Authority (CA) to handle certificates, which imposes a management overhead.

### **EAP-TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Service)**

EAP-TTLS is an extension of the EAP-TLS authentication that uses certificates for only the server-side authentications to establish a secure connection. Client authentication is then done by sending username and password through the secure connection, thus client identity is protected. For client authentication, EAP-TTLS supports EAP methods and legacy authentication methods such as PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAP v2.

### **PEAP (Protected EAP)**

Like EAP-TTLS, server-side certificate authentication is used to establish a secure connection, then use simple username and password methods through the secured connection to authenticate the clients, thus hiding client identity. However, PEAP only supports EAP methods, such as EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2 and EAP-GTC (EAP-Generic Token Card), for client authentication. EAP-GTC is implemented only by Cisco.

### **LEAP**

LEAP (Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol) is a Cisco implementation of IEEE 802.1x.



## Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

The AP maps a unique key that is generated with the RADIUS server. This key expires when the wireless connection times out, disconnects or reauthentication times out. A new WEP key is generated each time reauthentication is performed.

If this feature is enabled, it is not necessary to configure a default encryption key in the Wireless screen. You may still configure and store keys here, but they will not be used while Dynamic WEP is enabled.



### EAP-MD5 cannot be used with Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

For added security, certificate-based authentications (EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS and PEAP) use dynamic keys for data encryption. They are often deployed in corporate environments, but for public deployment, a simple user name and password pair is more practical. The following table is a comparison of the features of authentication types.

**Table 104** Comparison of EAP Authentication Types

	EAP-MD5	EAP-TLS	EAP-TTLS	PEAP	LEAP
Mutual Authentication	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Certificate – Client	No	Yes	Optional	Optional	No
Certificate – Server	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic Key Exchange	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Credential Integrity	None	Strong	Strong	Strong	Moderate
Deployment Difficulty	Easy	Hard	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate
Client Identity Protection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

## WPA and WPA2

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA or WPA2 and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, just use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

## Encryption

Both WPA and WPA2 improve data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. WPA and WPA2 use Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP) to offer stronger encryption than TKIP.

TKIP uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm called Rijndael. They both include a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

WPA and WPA2 regularly change and rotate the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice.

The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), with TKIP and AES it is more difficult to decrypt data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP and difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA(2) and WPA(2)-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA(2)-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA(2)-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs a consistent, single, alphanumeric password to derive a PMK which is used to generate unique temporal encryption keys. This prevents all wireless devices sharing the same encryption keys. (a weakness of WEP)

## User Authentication

WPA and WPA2 apply IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database. WPA2 reduces the number of key exchange messages from six to four (CCMP 4-way handshake) and shortens the time required to connect to a network. Other WPA2 authentication features that are different from WPA include key caching and pre-authentication. These two features are optional and may not be supported in all wireless devices.

Key caching allows a wireless client to store the PMK it derived through a successful authentication with an AP. The wireless client uses the PMK when it tries to connect to the same AP and does not need to go with the authentication process again.

Pre-authentication enables fast roaming by allowing the wireless client (already connecting to an AP) to perform IEEE 802.1x authentication with another AP before connecting to it.

## Wireless Client WPA Supplicants

A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client.

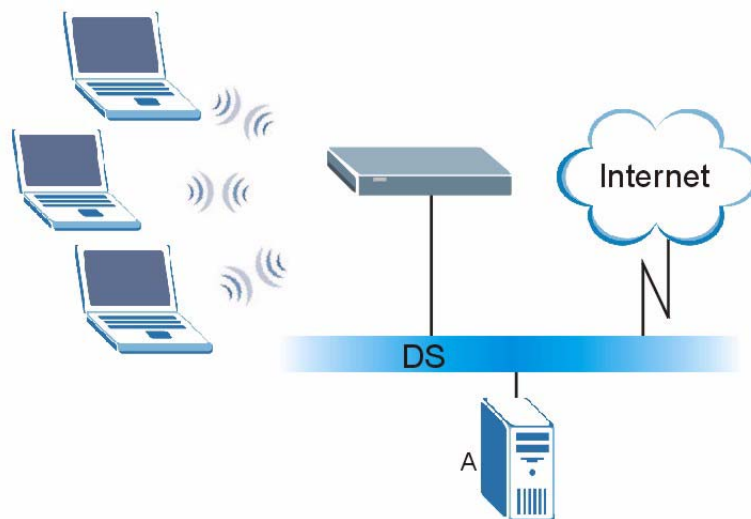
The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

## WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

You need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. "A" is the RADIUS server. "DS" is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client's authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- 3 The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

**Figure 187** WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example



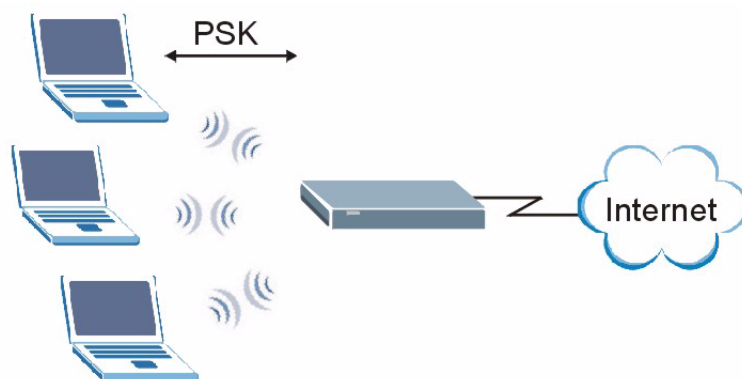
## WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and (only) allows it to join the network if the password matches.
- 3 The AP and wireless clients use the pre-shared key to generate a common PMK (Pairwise Master Key).

- 4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process to encrypt data exchanged between them.

**Figure 188** WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



## Security Parameters Summary

Refer to this table to see what other security parameters you should configure for each Authentication Method/ key management protocol type. MAC address filters are not dependent on how you configure these security features.

**Table 105** Wireless Security Relational Matrix

AUTHENTICATION METHOD/ KEY MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL	ENCRYPTION METHOD	ENTER MANUAL KEY	IEEE 802.1X
Open	None	No	Disable
			Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
Open	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
Shared	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
WPA	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable
WPA2	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA2-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable

## Antenna Overview

An antenna couples RF signals onto air. A transmitter within a wireless device sends an RF signal to the antenna, which propagates the signal through the air. The antenna also operates in reverse by capturing RF signals from the air.

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

## Antenna Characteristics

### Frequency

An antenna in the frequency of 2.4GHz (IEEE 802.11b) or 5GHz(IEEE 802.11a) is needed to communicate efficiently in a wireless LAN.

### Radiation Pattern

A radiation pattern is a diagram that allows you to visualize the shape of the antenna's coverage area.

### Antenna Gain

Antenna gain, measured in dB (decibel), is the increase in coverage within the RF beam width. Higher antenna gain improves the range of the signal for better communications.

For an indoor site, each 1 dB increase in antenna gain results in a range increase of approximately 2.5%. For an unobstructed outdoor site, each 1dB increase in gain results in a range increase of approximately 5%. Actual results may vary depending on the network environment.

Antenna gain is sometimes specified in dBi, which is how much the antenna increases the signal power compared to using an isotropic antenna. An isotropic antenna is a theoretical perfect antenna that sends out radio signals equally well in all directions. dBi represents the true gain that the antenna provides.

## Types of Antennas for WLAN

There are two types of antennas used for wireless LAN applications.

- Omni-directional antennas send the RF signal out in all directions on a horizontal plane. The coverage area is torus-shaped (like a donut) which makes these antennas ideal for a room environment. With a wide coverage area, it is possible to make circular overlapping coverage areas with multiple access points.
- Directional antennas concentrate the RF signal in a beam, like a flashlight does with the light from its bulb. The angle of the beam determines the width of the coverage pattern. Angles typically range from 20 degrees (very directional) to 120 degrees (less directional). Directional antennas are ideal for hallways and outdoor point-to-point applications.

## Positioning Antennas

In general, antennas should be mounted as high as practically possible and free of obstructions. In point-to-point application, position both antennas at the same height and in a direct line of sight to each other to attain the best performance.

For omni-directional antennas mounted on a table, desk, and so on, point the antenna up. For omni-directional antennas mounted on a wall or ceiling, point the antenna down. For a single AP application, place omni-directional antennas as close to the center of the coverage area as possible.

For directional antennas, point the antenna in the direction of the desired coverage area.

# Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).



---

**Internet Explorer 6 screens are used here. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.**

---

## Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

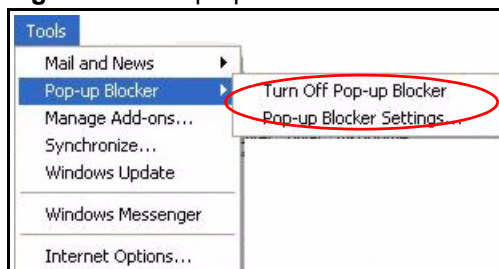
You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

### Disable pop-up Blockers

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Pop-up Blocker** and then select **Turn Off Pop-up Blocker**.

**Figure 189** Pop-up Blocker

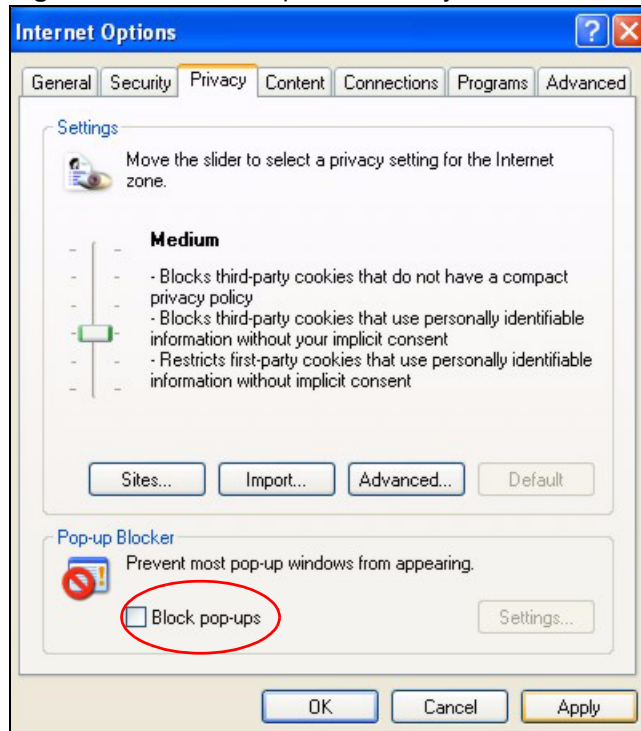


You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the **Pop-up Blocker** section in the **Privacy** tab.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options, Privacy**.

- 2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

**Figure 190** Internet Options: Privacy



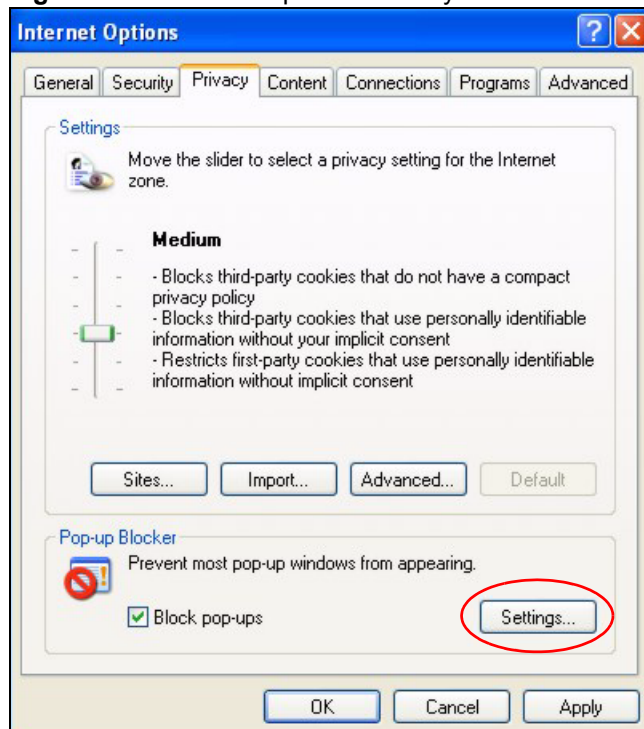
- 3 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

## Enable pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

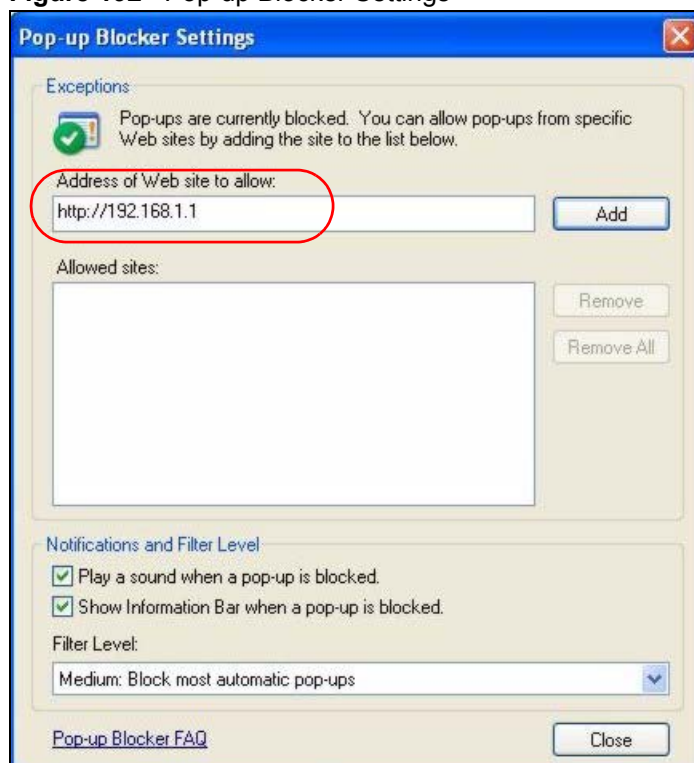
Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.
- 2 Select **Settings...** to open the **Pop-up Blocker Settings** screen.



**Figure 191** Internet Options: Privacy

- 3 Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix "http://". For example, http://192.168.167.1.
- 4 Click **Add** to move the IP address to the list of **Allowed sites**.

**Figure 192** Pop-up Blocker Settings

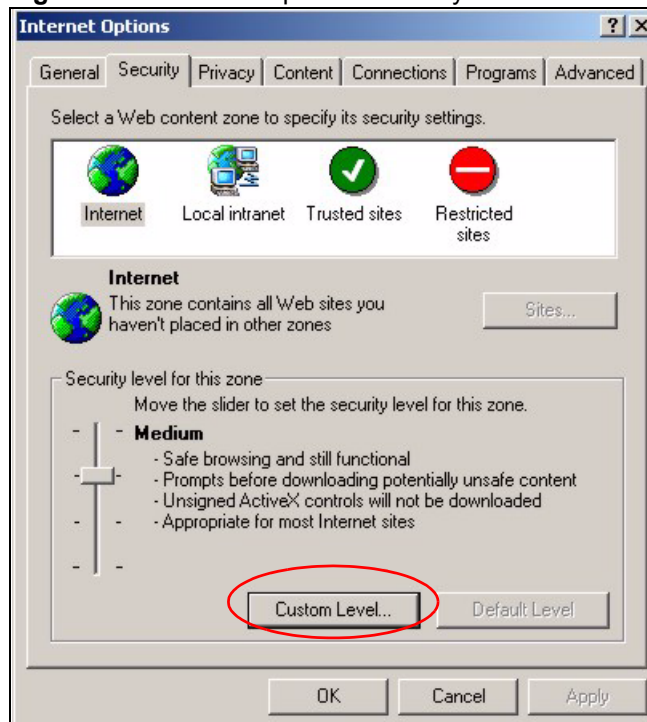
- 5 Click **Close** to return to the **Privacy** screen.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

## JavaScripts

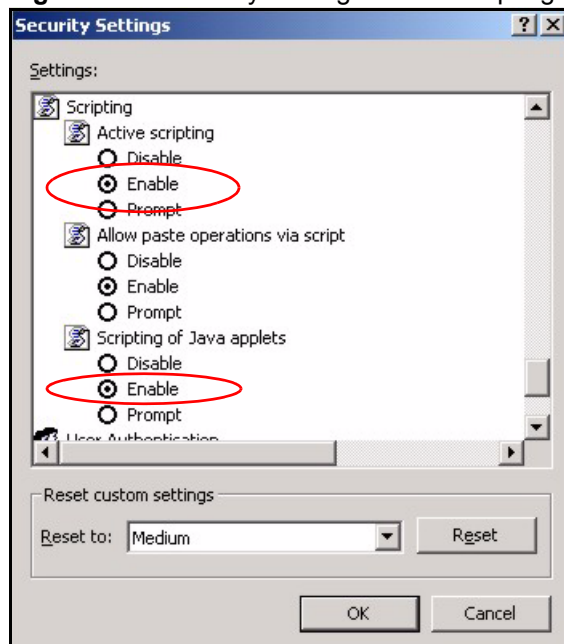
If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScripts are allowed.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

**Figure 193** Internet Options: Security

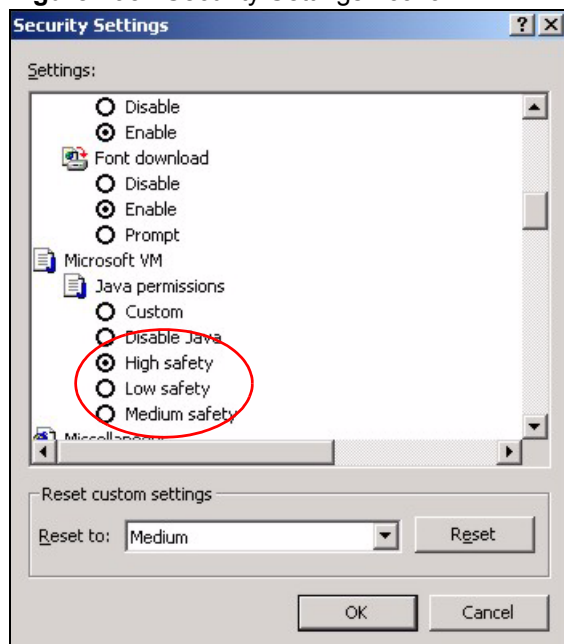


- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Scripting**.
- 4 Under **Active scripting** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 5 Under **Scripting of Java applets** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 6 Click **OK** to close the window.

**Figure 194** Security Settings - Java Scripting

## Java Permissions

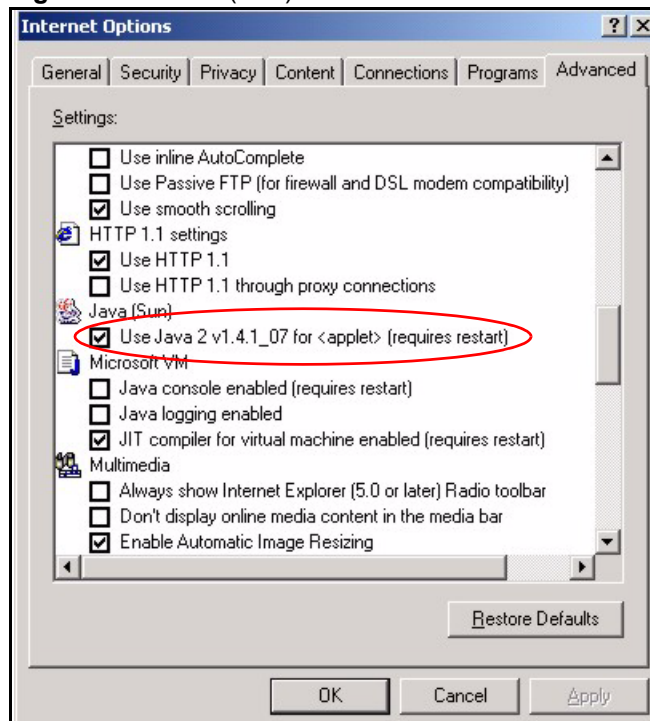
- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Microsoft VM**.
- 4 Under **Java permissions** make sure that a safety level is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the window.

**Figure 195** Security Settings - Java

## JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 Make sure that **Use Java 2 for <applet>** under **Java (Sun)** is selected.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the window.

**Figure 196** Java (Sun)



# IP Addresses and Subnetting

This appendix introduces IP addresses and subnet masks.

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

## Introduction to IP Addresses

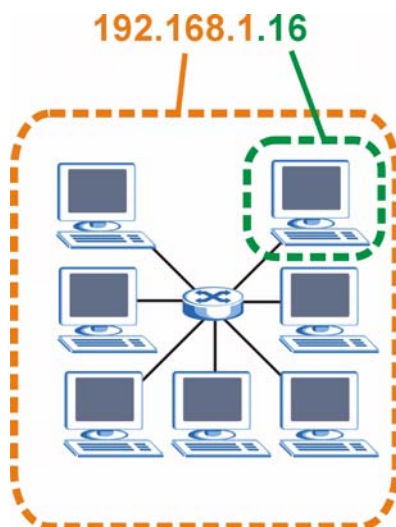
One part of the IP address is the network number, and the other part is the host ID. In the same way that houses on a street share a common street name, the hosts on a network share a common network number. Similarly, as each house has its own house number, each host on the network has its own unique identifying number - the host ID. Routers use the network number to send packets to the correct network, while the host ID determines to which host on the network the packets are delivered.

## Structure

An IP address is made up of four parts, written in dotted decimal notation (for example, 192.168.1.1). Each of these four parts is known as an octet. An octet is an eight-digit binary number (for example 11000000, which is 192 in decimal notation).

Therefore, each octet has a possible range of 00000000 to 11111111 in binary, or 0 to 255 in decimal.

The following figure shows an example IP address in which the first three octets (192.168.1) are the network number, and the fourth octet (16) is the host ID.

**Figure 197** Network Number and Host ID

How much of the IP address is the network number and how much is the host ID varies according to the subnet mask.

## Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). The term “subnet” is short for “sub-network”.

A subnet mask has 32 bits. If a bit in the subnet mask is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

The following example shows a subnet mask identifying the network number (in bold text) and host ID of an IP address (192.168.1.2 in decimal).

**Table 106** Subnet Masks

	<b>1ST OCTET: (192)</b>	<b>2ND OCTET: (168)</b>	<b>3RD OCTET: (1)</b>	<b>4TH OCTET (2)</b>
IP Address (Binary)	11000000	10101000	00000001	00000010
Subnet Mask (Binary)	<b>11111111</b>	<b>11111111</b>	<b>11111111</b>	00000000
Network Number	<b>11000000</b>	<b>10101000</b>	<b>00000001</b>	
Host ID				00000010

By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the leftmost bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Subnet masks can be referred to by the size of the network number part (the bits with a “1” value). For example, an “8-bit mask” means that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones and the remaining 24 bits are zeroes.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just like IP addresses. The following examples show the binary and decimal notation for 8-bit, 16-bit, 24-bit and 29-bit subnet masks.

**Table 107** Subnet Masks

	BINARY				DECIMAL
	1ST OCTET	2ND OCTET	3RD OCTET	4TH OCTET	
8-bit mask	11111111	00000000	00000000	00000000	255.0.0.0
16-bit mask	11111111	11111111	00000000	00000000	255.255.0.0
24-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000	255.255.255.0
29-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	11111000	255.255.255.248

## Network Size

The size of the network number determines the maximum number of possible hosts you can have on your network. The larger the number of network number bits, the smaller the number of remaining host ID bits.

An IP address with host IDs of all zeros is the IP address of the network (192.168.1.0 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example). An IP address with host IDs of all ones is the broadcast address for that network (192.168.1.255 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example).

As these two IP addresses cannot be used for individual hosts, calculate the maximum number of possible hosts in a network as follows:

**Table 108** Maximum Host Numbers

SUBNET MASK		HOST ID SIZE		MAXIMUM NUMBER OF HOSTS
8 bits	255.0.0.0	24 bits	$2^{24} - 2$	16777214
16 bits	255.255.0.0	16 bits	$2^{16} - 2$	65534
24 bits	255.255.255.0	8 bits	$2^8 - 2$	254
29 bits	255.255.255.248	3 bits	$2^3 - 2$	6

## Notation

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows some possible subnet masks using both notations.

**Table 109** Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000	0
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000	128

**Table 109** Alternative Subnet Mask Notation (continued)

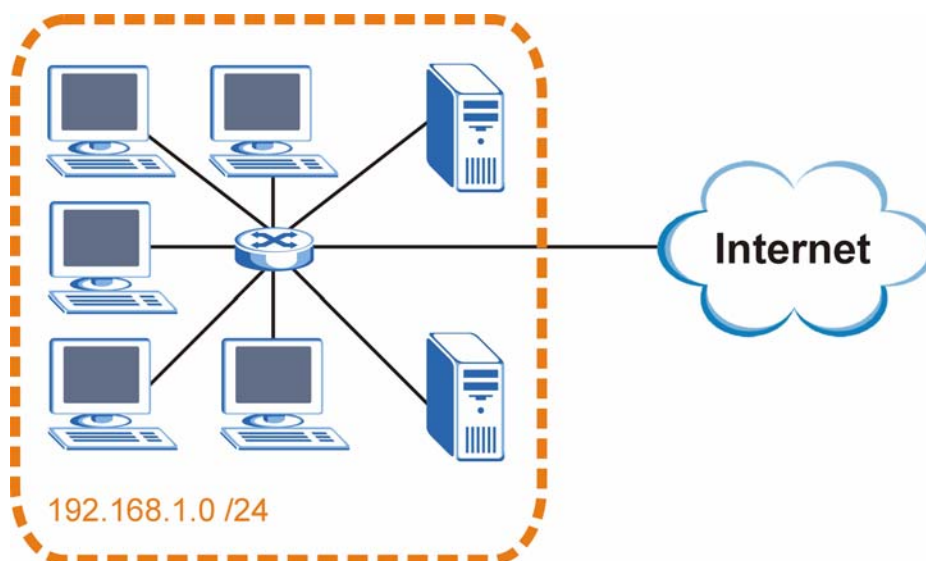
SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000	192
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000	224
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000	240
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000	248
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100	252

## Subnetting

You can use subnetting to divide one network into multiple sub-networks. In the following example a network administrator creates two sub-networks to isolate a group of servers from the rest of the company network for security reasons.

In this example, the company network address is 192.168.1.0. The first three octets of the address (192.168.1) are the network number, and the remaining octet is the host ID, allowing a maximum of  $2^8 - 2$  or 254 possible hosts.

The following figure shows the company network before subnetting.

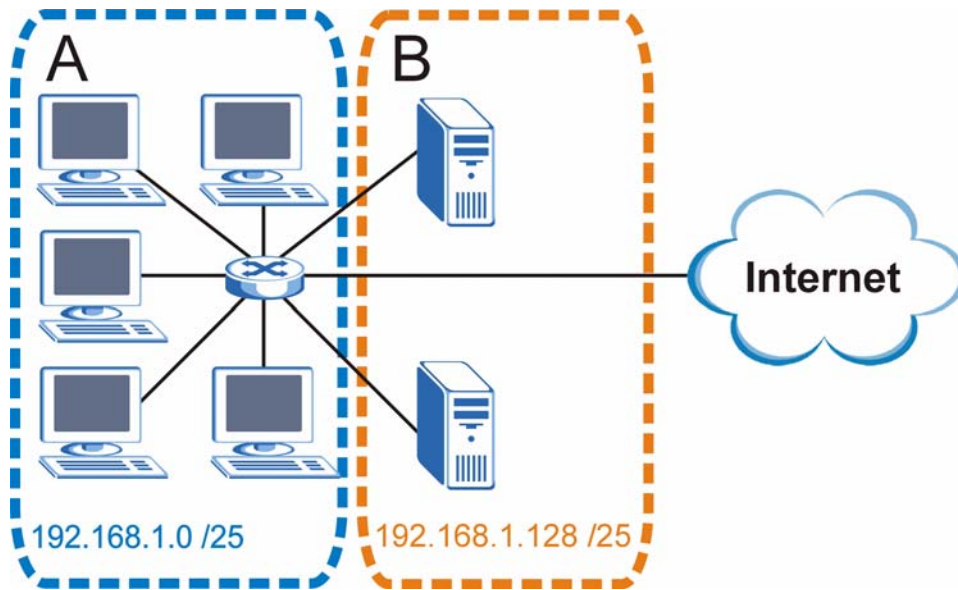
**Figure 198** Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting

You can “borrow” one of the host ID bits to divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate sub-networks. The subnet mask is now 25 bits (255.255.255.128 or /25).

The “borrowed” host ID bit can have a value of either 0 or 1, allowing two subnets; 192.168.1.0 /25 and 192.168.1.128 /25.

The following figure shows the company network after subnetting. There are now two sub-networks, **A** and **B**.



**Figure 199** Subnetting Example: After Subnetting

In a 25-bit subnet the host ID has 7 bits, so each sub-network has a maximum of  $2^7 - 2$  or 126 possible hosts (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet's address itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is subnet **A** itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is its broadcast address. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for subnet **A** is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126.

Similarly, the host ID range for subnet **B** is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

## Example: Four Subnets

The previous example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a 24-bit address into two subnets. Similarly, to divide a 24-bit address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations (00, 01, 10 and 11). The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192.

Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving  $2^6 - 2$  or 62 hosts for each subnet (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

**Table 110** Subnet 1

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address (Decimal)	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

**Table 111** Subnet 2

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

**Table 112** Subnet 3

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

**Table 113** Subnet 4

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

## Example: Eight Subnets

Similarly, use a 27-bit mask to create eight subnets (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110 and 111).

The following table shows IP address last octet values for each subnet.

**Table 114** Eight Subnets

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127

**Table 114** Eight Subnets (continued)

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

## Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 24-bit network number.

**Table 115** 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 16-bit network number.

**Table 116** 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6

**Table 116** 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning (continued)

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1

## Configuring IP Addresses

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. You must also enable Network Address Translation (NAT) on the ZyXEL Device.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address for your ZyXEL Device that is easy to remember (for instance, 192.168.1.1) but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your ZyXEL Device will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

### Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (running only between two branch offices, for example) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 — 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 — 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 — 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP, or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, *Address Allocation for Private Internets* and RFC 1466, *Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space*.

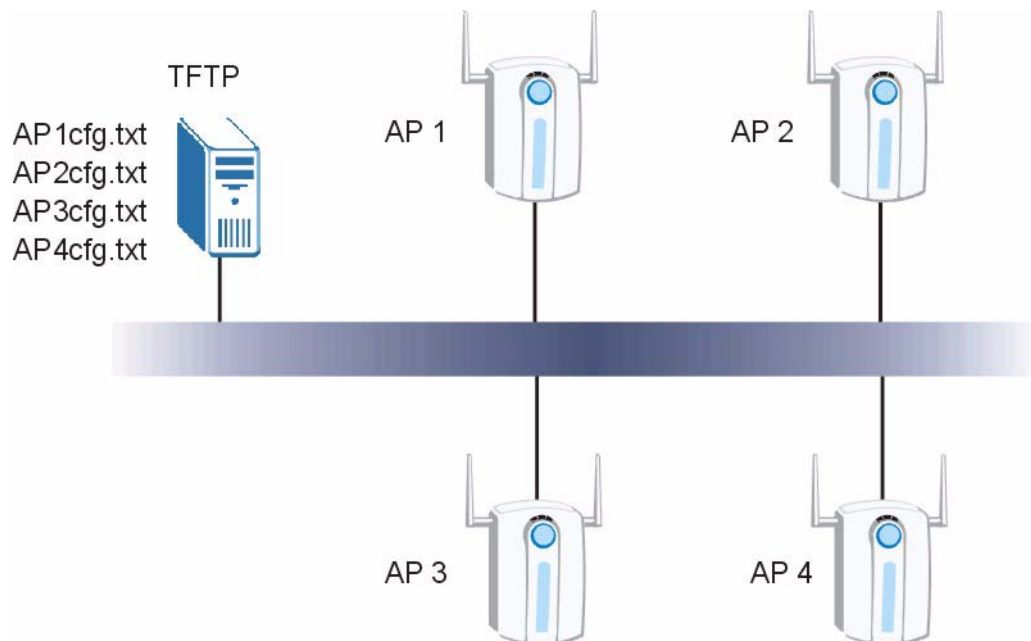
# Text File Based Auto Configuration

This chapter describes how administrators can use text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings for multiple APs.

## Text File Based Auto Configuration Overview

You can use plain text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings on multiple APs. The AP can automatically get a configuration file from a TFTP server at startup or after renewing DHCP client information.

**Figure 200** Text File Based Auto Configuration



Use one of the following methods to give the AP the IP address of the TFTP server where you store the configuration files and the name of the configuration file that it should download.

You can have a different configuration file for each AP. You can also have multiple APs use the same configuration file.



**If adjacent APs use the same configuration file, you should leave out the channel setting since they could interfere with each other's wireless traffic.**

## Auto Configuration by DHCP

A DHCP response can use options 66 and 67 to assign a TFTP server IP address and a filename. If the AP is configured as a DHCP client, these settings can be used to perform auto configuration.

**Table 117** Auto Configuration by DHCP

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wcfg autocfg dhcp [enable   disable]	Turn configuration of TFTP server IP address and filename through DHCP on or off.

If this feature is enabled and the DHCP response provides a TFTP server IP address and a filename, the AP will try to download the file from the specified TFTP server. The AP then uses the file to configure wireless LAN settings.



**Not all DHCP servers allow you to specify options 66 and 67.**

## Manual Configuration

Use the following command to manually configure a TFTP server IP address and a file name for the AP to use for auto provisioning whenever the AP starts up. See [Section 25.1 on page 235](#) for how to access the Command Interpreter (CI).

**Table 118** Manual Configuration

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wcfg autocfg server [IP] [filename]	Specify the TFTP server IP address and file name from which the AP is to download a configuration file whenever the AP starts up.

## Configuration Via SNMP

You can configure and trigger the auto configuration remotely via SNMP.

Use the following procedure to have the AP download the configuration file.

**Table 119** Configuration via SNMP

STEPS	MIB VARIABLE	VALUE
Step 1	pwTftpServer	Set the IP address of the TFTP server.
Step 2	pwTftpFileName	Set the file name, for example, g3000hcfg.txt.

**Table 119** Configuration via SNMP

STEPS	MIB VARIABLE	VALUE
Step 3	pwTftpFileType	Set to 3 (text configuration file).
Step 4	pwTftpOpCommand	Set to 2 (download).

## Verifying Your Configuration File Upload Via SNMP

You can use SNMP management software to display the configuration file version currently on the device by using the following MIB.

**Table 120** Displaying the File Version

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwCfgVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.2	This displays the current configuration file version.

## Troubleshooting Via SNMP

If you have any difficulties with the configuration file upload, you can try using the following MIB 10 to 20 seconds after using SNMP to have the AP download the configuration file.

**Table 121** Displaying the File Version

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwTftpOpStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.6	This displays the current operating status of the TFTP client.

## Configuration File Format

The text based configuration file must use the following format.

**Figure 201** Configuration File Format

```

!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 12
wcfg security 1 xxx
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 1 xxx
wcfg ssid save

```

The first line must be `!#ZYXEL PROWLAN`.

The second line must specify the file version. The AP compares the file version with the version of the last configuration file that it downloaded. If the version of the downloaded file is the same or smaller (older), the AP ignores the file. If the version of the downloaded file is larger (newer), the AP uses the file.

## Configuration File Rules

You can only use the `wlan` and `wcfg` commands in the configuration file. The AP ignores other ZyNOS commands but continues to check the next command.

The AP ignores any improperly formatted commands and continues to check the next line.

If there are any errors while processing the configuration file, the AP generates a message with the line number and reason for the first error (subsequent errors during the processing of an individual configuration file are not recorded). You can use SNMP management software to display the message by using the following MIB.

**Table 122** Displaying the Auto Configuration Status

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwAutoCfgMessage	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.9	Auto configuration status message string

The commands will be executed line by line just like if you entered them in a console or Telnet CI session. Be careful to ensure the integrity of the whole AP configuration. If there are existing settings in the AP, the newly loaded configuration file will either coexist with the previous settings or replace them.

You can zip each configuration file. You must use the store compression method and a .zip file extension. When zipping a configuration file, you can also add password protection using the same password that you use to log into the AP.

## Wcfg Command Configuration File Examples

These example configuration files use the `wcfg` command to configure security and SSID profiles.

**Figure 202** WEP Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 11
wcfg security 1 name Test-wep
wcfg security 1 security wep
wcfg security 1 wep keysize 64 ascii
wcfg security 1 wep key1 abcde
wcfg security 1 wep key2 bcdef
wcfg security 1 wep key3 cdefg
wcfg security 1 wep key4 defgh
wcfg security 1 wep keyindex 1
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 1 name ssid-wep
wcfg ssid 1 security Test-wep
wcfg ssid 1 isolation disable
wcfg ssid 1 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```



**Figure 203** 802.1X Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 12
wcfg security 2 name Test-8021x
wcfg security 2 mode 8021x-static128
wcfg security 2 wep key1 abcdefghijklm
wcfg security 2 wep key2 bcdefghijklmn
wcfg security 2 wep keyindex 1
wcfg security 2 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 2 idletime 3600
wcfg security save
wcfg radius 2 name radius-rd
wcfg radius 2 primary 172.23.3.4 1812 1234 enable
wcfg radius 2 backup 172.23.3.5 1812 1234 enable
wcfg radius save
wcfg ssid 2 name ssid-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 security Test-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 radius radius-rd
wcfg ssid 2 qos 4
wcfg ssid 2 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 2 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

**Figure 204** WPA-PSK Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 13
wcfg security 3 name Test-wpapsk
wcfg security 3 mode wpapsk
wcfg security 3 passphrase qwertyuiop
wcfg security 3 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 3 idletime 3600
wcfg security 3 groupkeytime 1800
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 3 name ssid-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 security Test-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 qos 4
wcfg ssid 3 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 3 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

**Figure 205 WPA Configuration File Example**

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 14
wcfg security 4 name Test-wpa
wcfg security 4 mode wpa
wcfg security 4 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 4 idletime 3600
wcfg security 4 groupkeytime 1800
wcfg security save
wcfg radius 4 name radius-rd1
wcfg radius 4 primary 172.0.20.38 1812 20 enable
wcfg radius 4 backup 172.0.20.39 1812 20 enable
wcfg radius save
wcfg ssid 4 name ssid-wpa
wcfg ssid 4 security Test-wpa
wcfg ssid 4 qos 4
wcfg ssid 4 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 4 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

### **Wlan Command Configuration File Example**

This example configuration file uses the `wlan` command to configure the AP to use the security and SSID profiles from the `wcfg` command configuration file examples and general wireless settings. You could actually combine all of this chapter's example configuration files into a single configuration file. Remember that the commands are applied in order. So for example, you would place the commands that create security and SSID profiles before the commands that tell the AP to use those profiles.

**Figure 206** Wlan Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 15
wcfg ssid 1 name ssid-wep
wcfg ssid 1 security Test-wep
wcfg ssid 2 name ssid-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 security Test-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 radius radius-rd
wcfg ssid 3 name ssid-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 security Test-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 4 name ssid-wpa2psk
wcfg ssid 4 security Test-wpa2psk
wcfg ssid save
!line starting with '!' is comment
!change to channel 8
wlan chid 8
!change operating mode -> AP mode,
!then select ssid-wep as running WLAN profile
wlan opmode 0
wlan ssidprofile ssid-wep
!change operating mode -> MBSSID mode,
!then select ssid-wpapsk, ssid-wpa2psk as running WLAN profiles
wlan opmode 3
wlan ssidprofile ssid-wpapsk ssid-wpa2psk
! set output power level to 50%
wlan output power 2
```



# Legal Information

## Copyright

Copyright © 2007 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

## Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

## Certifications

### Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

The device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this device does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the device off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- 1 Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- 2 Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- 3 Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- 4 Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.



### FCC Radiation Exposure Statement

- This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- For operation within 5.15 ~ 5.25GHz frequency range, it is restricted to indoor environment.
- IEEE 802.11b or 802.11g operation of this product in the U.S.A. is firmware-limited to channels 1 through 11.
- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, a separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between the antenna of this device and all persons.

### 注意！

依據 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。  
前項合法通信，指依電信規定作業之無線電信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

在 5250MHz~5350MHz 頻帶內操作之無線資訊傳輸設備，限於室內使用。

本機限在不干擾合法電臺與不受被干擾保障條件下於室內使用。

### Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device has been designed for the WLAN 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz networks throughout the EC region and Switzerland, with restrictions in France.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

**Viewing Certifications**

- 1 Go to <http://www.zyxel.com>.
- 2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

**ZyXEL Limited Warranty**

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

**Note**

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

**Registration**

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for global products, or at [www.us.zyxel.com](http://www.us.zyxel.com) for North American products.





# Customer Support

Please have the following information ready when you contact customer support.

## Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

“+” is the (prefix) number you dial to make an international telephone call.

## Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide)

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.com.tw](mailto:support@zyxel.com.tw)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.com.tw](mailto:sales@zyxel.com.tw)
- Telephone: +886-3-578-3942
- Fax: +886-3-578-2439
- Web: [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com), [www.europe.zyxel.com](http://www.europe.zyxel.com)
- FTP: [ftp.zyxel.com](ftp://ftp.zyxel.com), [ftp.europe.zyxel.com](ftp://ftp.europe.zyxel.com)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science Park, Hsinchu 300, Taiwan

## Costa Rica

- Support E-mail: [soporte@zyxel.co.cr](mailto:soporte@zyxel.co.cr)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.co.cr](mailto:sales@zyxel.co.cr)
- Telephone: +506-2017878
- Fax: +506-2015098
- Web: [www.zyxel.co.cr](http://www.zyxel.co.cr)
- FTP: [ftp.zyxel.co.cr](ftp://ftp.zyxel.co.cr)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Costa Rica, Plaza Roble Escazú, Etapa El Patio, Tercer Piso, San José, Costa Rica

## Czech Republic

- E-mail: [info@cz.zyxel.com](mailto:info@cz.zyxel.com)
- Telephone: +420-241-091-350
- Fax: +420-241-091-359
- Web: [www.zyxel.cz](http://www.zyxel.cz)

- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, Czech s.r.o., Modranská 621, 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany, Česká Republika

### **Denmark**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.dk
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.dk
- Telephone: +45-39-55-07-00
- Fax: +45-39-55-07-07
- Web: www.zyxel.dk
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Columbusvej, 2860 Soeborg, Denmark

### **Finland**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.fi
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.fi
- Telephone: +358-9-4780-8411
- Fax: +358-9-4780-8448
- Web: www.zyxel.fi
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Oy, Malminkaari 10, 00700 Helsinki, Finland

### **France**

- E-mail: info@zyxel.fr
- Telephone: +33-4-72-52-97-97
- Fax: +33-4-72-52-19-20
- Web: www.zyxel.fr
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL France, 1 rue des Vergers, Bat. 1 / C, 69760 Limonest, France

### **Germany**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.de
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.de
- Telephone: +49-2405-6909-69
- Fax: +49-2405-6909-99
- Web: www.zyxel.de
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH., Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146, Wuerselen, Germany

### **Hungary**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.hu
- Sales E-mail: info@zyxel.hu
- Telephone: +36-1-3361649
- Fax: +36-1-3259100
- Web: www.zyxel.hu
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Hungary, 48, Zoldlomb Str., H-1025, Budapest, Hungary

**India**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.in](mailto:support@zyxel.in)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.in](mailto:sales@zyxel.in)
- Telephone: +91-11-30888144 to +91-11-30888153
- Fax: +91-11-30888149, +91-11-26810715
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.in>
- Regular Mail: India - ZyXEL Technology India Pvt Ltd., II-Floor, F2/9 Okhla Phase -1, New Delhi 110020, India

**Japan**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.co.jp](mailto:support@zyxel.co.jp)
- Sales E-mail: [zyp@zyxel.co.jp](mailto:zyp@zyxel.co.jp)
- Telephone: +81-3-6847-3700
- Fax: +81-3-6847-3705
- Web: [www.zyxel.co.jp](http://www.zyxel.co.jp)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Japan, 3F, Office T&U, 1-10-10 Higashi-Gotanda, Shinagawa-ku, Tokyo 141-0022, Japan

**Kazakhstan**

- Support: <http://zyxel.kz/support>
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.kz](mailto:sales@zyxel.kz)
- Telephone: +7-3272-590-698
- Fax: +7-3272-590-689
- Web: [www.zyxel.kz](http://www.zyxel.kz)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Kazakhstan, 43 Dostyk Ave., Office 414, Dostyk Business Centre, 050010 Almaty, Republic of Kazakhstan

**Malaysia**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.com.my](mailto:support@zyxel.com.my)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.com.my](mailto:sales@zyxel.com.my)
- Telephone: +603-8076-9933
- Fax: +603-8076-9833
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.com.my>
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Malaysia Sdn Bhd., 1-02 & 1-03, Jalan Kenari 17F, Bandar Puchong Jaya, 47100 Puchong, Selangor Darul Ehsan, Malaysia

**North America**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.com](mailto:support@zyxel.com)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.com](mailto:sales@zyxel.com)
- Telephone: +1-800-255-4101, +1-714-632-0882
- Fax: +1-714-632-0858
- Web: [www.us.zyxel.com](http://www.us.zyxel.com)
- FTP: <ftp.us.zyxel.com>

- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Inc., 1130 N. Miller St., Anaheim, CA 92806-2001, U.S.A.

### **Norway**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.no](mailto:support@zyxel.no)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.no](mailto:sales@zyxel.no)
- Telephone: +47-22-80-61-80
- Fax: +47-22-80-61-81
- Web: [www.zyxel.no](http://www.zyxel.no)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Nils Hansens vei 13, 0667 Oslo, Norway

### **Poland**

- E-mail: [info@pl.zyxel.com](mailto:info@pl.zyxel.com)
- Telephone: +48-22-333 8250
- Fax: +48-22-333 8251
- Web: [www.pl.zyxel.com](http://www.pl.zyxel.com)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, ul. Okrzei 1A, 03-715 Warszawa, Poland

### **Russia**

- Support: <http://zyxel.ru/support>
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.ru](mailto:sales@zyxel.ru)
- Telephone: +7-095-542-89-29
- Fax: +7-095-542-89-25
- Web: [www.zyxel.ru](http://www.zyxel.ru)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Russia, Ostrovityanova 37a Str., Moscow 117279, Russia

### **Singapore**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.com.sg](mailto:support@zyxel.com.sg)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.com.sg](mailto:sales@zyxel.com.sg)
- Telephone: +65-6899-6678
- Fax: +65-6899-8887
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.com.sg>
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Singapore Pte Ltd., No. 2 International Business Park, The Strategy #03-28, Singapore 609930

### **Spain**

- Support E-mail: [support@zyxel.es](mailto:support@zyxel.es)
- Sales E-mail: [sales@zyxel.es](mailto:sales@zyxel.es)
- Telephone: +34-902-195-420
- Fax: +34-913-005-345
- Web: [www.zyxel.es](http://www.zyxel.es)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, Arte, 21 5ª planta, 28033 Madrid, Spain

**Sweden**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.se
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.se
- Telephone: +46-31-744-7700
- Fax: +46-31-744-7701
- Web: www.zyxel.se
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg, Sweden

**Thailand**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.co.th
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.th
- Telephone: +662-831-5315
- Fax: +662-831-5395
- Web: http://www.zyxel.co.th
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Thailand Co., Ltd., 1/1 Moo 2, Ratchaphruk Road, Bangrak-Noi, Muang, Nonthaburi 11000, Thailand.

**Ukraine**

- Support E-mail: support@ua.zyxel.com
- Sales E-mail: sales@ua.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +380-44-247-69-78
- Fax: +380-44-494-49-32
- Web: www.ua.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Ukraine, 13, Pimonenko Str., Kiev 04050, Ukraine

**United Kingdom**

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.co.uk
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.uk
- Telephone: +44-1344-303044, 08707-555779 (UK only)
- Fax: +44-1344-303034
- Web: www.zyxel.co.uk
- FTP: ftp.zyxel.co.uk
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK)



# Index

## A

- access [34](#)
- access point [34](#)
- access privileges [36](#)
- address assignment [133](#)
- address filtering [33](#)
- administrator authentication on RADIUS [78](#)
- Advanced Encryption Standard
  - See AES.
- AES [278](#)
- alternative subnet mask notation [291](#)
- antenna [251](#)
  - directional [281](#)
  - gain [281](#)
  - omni-directional [281](#)
- AP [33](#), [34](#), [35](#), [135](#)
- AP (access point) [271](#)
- AP+Bridge [33](#)
- AP/Bridge [35](#)
- applications [33](#)
  - Access Point [34](#)
  - AP/Bridge [36](#)
  - Bridge/Repeater [34](#)
  - MBSSID [36](#)
- ATC [85](#), [121](#)
- ATC+WMM [121](#)
- ATM [85](#)
- authentication server [33](#)
- auto configuration [297](#)
- auto configuration status [300](#)

## B

- backup [204](#)
- Basic Service Set [83](#)
  - see BSS
- bridge [34](#), [35](#)
- Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) [89](#)
- Bridge/Repeater [33](#), [34](#)
- BSS [36](#), [83](#), [269](#)
- BSSID [33](#)

## C

- CA [276](#)
- Certificate Authority
  - See CA.
- certificates [152](#)
  - thumbprint algorithms [158](#)
  - thumbprints [158](#)
  - verifying fingerprints [158](#)
- certifications [305](#)
  - notices [306](#)
  - viewing [307](#)
- channel [34](#), [271](#)
  - interference [271](#)
- CI commands [236](#)
- Class of Service (CoS) [87](#)
- collision [224](#)
- command interface [38](#)
- command interpreter [235](#)
- community [219](#)
- configuration [33](#)
- configuration file
  - examples [300](#)
  - format [299](#)
- configuration file rules [299](#)
- contact information [309](#)
- copyright [305](#)
- CoS [87](#)
- CPU load [224](#)
- CTS (Clear to Send) [272](#)
- customer support [309](#)

## D

- default [206](#)
- DFS [90](#)
- DHCP [226](#)
- diagnostic [227](#)
- diagnostic tools [223](#)
- Differentiated Services [87](#)
- DiffServ [87](#)
- DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) [87](#)
- DiffServ Code Points [87](#)

DiffServ marking rule [88](#)  
disclaimer [305](#)  
Distribution System [84](#)  
DS field [87](#)  
DSCPs [87](#)  
Dynamic Frequency Selection [90](#)  
dynamic WEP key exchange [277](#)

## E

EAP [99](#), [100](#)  
EAP authentication [275](#)  
encryption [36](#), [101](#), [278](#)  
error log [226](#)  
error/information messages  
    sample [227](#)  
ESS [84](#), [270](#)  
ESS IDentification [84](#)  
ESSID [247](#)  
Extended Service Set [84](#)  
    see ESS  
Extended Service Set IDentification [92](#), [117](#)

## F

FCC interference statement [305](#)  
file version [299](#)  
filename conventions [229](#)  
filtering [33](#)  
firmware file  
    maintenance [202](#)  
flow control [209](#)  
fragmentation threshold [272](#)  
friendly AP list [138](#)  
FTP [38](#), [141](#), [143](#), [241](#)  
    restrictions [141](#), [241](#)

## G

general setup [77](#), [215](#)  
guest SSID [37](#)

## H

hidden menus [213](#)  
hidden node [271](#)  
honeypot attack [136](#)  
host [79](#)  
humidity [251](#)

## I

IANA [296](#)  
IBSS [269](#)  
IEEE 802.11g [273](#)  
IEEE 802.1x [33](#)  
in-band management [185](#)  
Independent Basic Service Set [202](#)  
    see IBSS  
initial screen [209](#)  
initialization vector (IV) [278](#)  
installation [33](#)  
interference [34](#)  
internal authentication server [33](#)  
Internet access [217](#)  
Internet Assigned Numbers Authority  
    See IANA  
Internet security gateway [33](#)  
Internet telephony [37](#)  
IP address [133](#), [134](#), [218](#), [226](#), [228](#), [252](#)  
IPSec VPN capability [252](#)  
isolation [33](#)

## L

layer-2 isolation [33](#), [37](#)  
LEDs [39](#)  
link type [224](#)  
log and trace [227](#)  
log descriptions [178](#)  
login screen [210](#)  
logs [175](#)

## M

MAC address [33](#), [128](#)



MAC address filter action [130](#)  
 MAC filter [37](#), [99](#), [128](#)  
 MAC filtering [253](#)  
 MAC service data unit [92](#), [95](#), [117](#)  
 main menu [213](#)  
 maintenance [33](#)  
 management [33](#)  
 Management Information Base (MIB) [146](#)  
 management VLAN [185](#)  
 managing the device  
   good habits [38](#)  
   using FTP. See FTP.  
   using Telnet. See command interface.  
   using the command interface. See command interface.  
 max age [89](#)  
 MBSSID [33](#), [36](#)  
 Message Integrity Check (MIC) [278](#)  
 mobile access [33](#)  
 mode [33](#)  
 models covered [33](#)  
 MSDU [92](#), [95](#), [117](#)

## N

NAT [296](#)  
 network [33](#)  
 network access [33](#)  
 network bridge [34](#)  
 network traffic [33](#)

## O

operating mode [33](#)  
 out-of-band management [185](#)

## P

packets [224](#)  
 Pairwise Master Key (PMK) [278](#), [279](#)  
 password [78](#), [210](#), [211](#), [219](#), [252](#)  
 path cost [89](#)  
 Per-Hop Behavior [87](#)  
 PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [88](#)  
 ping [228](#)

PoE [255](#)  
 power specification [251](#)  
 power specifications [255](#)  
 preamble mode [273](#)  
 pre-configured profiles [37](#)  
 priorities [85](#)  
 prioritization [33](#)  
 private IP address [133](#)  
 product registration [307](#)  
 PSK [278](#)

## Q

QoS [33](#), [121](#)  
 Quick Start Guide [41](#)

## R

radio [34](#)  
 RADIUS [274](#)  
   message types [275](#)  
   messages [275](#)  
   shared secret key [275](#)  
 rapid STP [88](#)  
 RAS [226](#)  
 rate  
   receiving [224](#)  
   transmission [224](#)  
 reauthentication time [107](#), [108](#), [109](#), [110](#), [111](#)  
 registration  
   product [307](#)  
 related documentation [3](#)  
 remote management limitations [141](#), [241](#)  
 remote management setup [239](#)  
 remote node [224](#)  
 repeater [34](#)  
 required fields [213](#)  
 restore [205](#)  
 restore configuration [232](#)  
 RF interference [34](#)  
 roaming [130](#)  
   requirements [131](#)  
 rogue AP [33](#), [135](#), [136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#)  
 rogue AP list [139](#)  
 root bridge [89](#)  
 RTS (Request To Send) [272](#)  
   threshold [271](#), [272](#)

RTS/CTS handshake [92, 95, 117](#)

## S

safety warnings [6](#)

screws [253](#)

security [34](#)

security profiles [33](#)

server [33](#)

Service Set [92, 117](#)

Service Set Identifier  
see SSID

SMT [212](#)

SMT menu overview [212](#)

SNMP [145, 253](#)

community [219](#)

configuration [219](#)

manager [146](#)

MIBs [146](#)

traps [147](#)

trusted host [219](#)

Spanning Tree Protocol [88](#)

specifications [255](#)

SSID [36](#)

hide SSID [99](#)

SSID profile [119](#)

pre-configured [37](#)

SSID profiles [36, 37](#)

STP [88](#)

STP - how it works [89](#)

STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) [252](#)

STP path costs [89](#)

STP port states [90](#)

STP terminology [89](#)

subnet [289](#)

subnet mask [218, 226, 252, 290](#)

subnetting [292](#)

syntax conventions [4](#)

system

console port speed [226](#)

diagnostic [227](#)

log and trace [226](#)

system information [225](#)

system status [223](#)

time and date [237](#)

system information [225](#)

system information & diagnosis [223](#)

system maintenance [223, 225, 231, 233, 235, 237](#)

system name [77](#)

system timeout [141, 241](#)

## T

tagged VLAN example [185](#)

TCP/IP [228, 239](#)

telnet [142, 238](#)

telnet configuration [238, 239](#)

telnet under NAT [239](#)

temperature [251](#)

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) [278](#)

terminal emulation [209](#)

text file based auto configuration [253, 297](#)

TFTP

restrictions [241](#)

TFTP file transfer [233](#)

TFTP restrictions [141](#)

time and date setting [237](#)

time setting [80](#)

time zone [238](#)

time-sensitive [33](#)

ToS [87](#)

trace records [226](#)

trademarks [305](#)

traffic security [33](#)

Type of Service [87](#)

## U

use [33](#)

user authentication [101](#)

## V

Virtual Local Area Network [181](#)

VLAN [181](#)

VoIP [33, 37, 121](#)

VoIP SSID [37](#)

VT100 [209](#)

## W

warranty [307](#)

note [307](#)

wcfg command [300](#)

WDS [34, 36, 92](#)

- web [144](#)
- web configurator [33](#), [41](#), [43](#)
- WEP [33](#)
- WEP encryption [99](#), [106](#)
- Wi-Fi Multimedia QoS [85](#)
- Wi-Fi Protected Access [33](#), [277](#)
- wired network [33](#), [34](#)
- wireless channel [247](#)
- wireless client WPA supplicants [104](#), [279](#)
- Wireless Distribution System (WDS) [36](#)
- wireless Internet connection [34](#)
- wireless LAN [247](#)
- wireless security [36](#), [99](#), [247](#), [273](#)
- WLAN
  - interference [271](#)
  - security parameters [280](#)
- WLAN interface [34](#)
- WMM [121](#)
- WPA [33](#), [100](#), [277](#)
  - key caching [278](#)
  - pre-authentication [278](#)
  - user authentication [278](#)
  - vs WPA-PSK [278](#)
  - wireless client supplicant [279](#)
  - with RADIUS application example [279](#)
- WPA with RADIUS application [102](#)
- WPA2 [33](#), [277](#)
  - user authentication [278](#)
  - vs WPA2-PSK [278](#)
  - wireless client supplicant [279](#)
  - with RADIUS application example [279](#)
- WPA2-Pre-Shared Key [277](#)
- WPA2-PSK [277](#), [278](#)
  - application example [279](#)
- WPA-PSK [277](#), [278](#)
  - application example [279](#)

## Z

- ZyNOS [230](#)
- ZyNOS F/W version [230](#)

